Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A to Z

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

M6 Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW M6.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW M6's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW M6 throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.
We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

BMW recommends Castrol

© 2007 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts,
only with the written consent of
BMW AG, Munich.
f330Manuals2.com
Order No. 01 41 0 014 244
US English VIII/07, 07 09 500
Printed in Germany
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the index, refer to page 240.

CarManuals2.com

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
23 Voice command system

Controls
28 Opening and closing
45 Adjusting
56 Transporting children safely
59 Driving
69 Everything under control
81 Technology for comfort, convenience and safety
96 Lamps
101 Climate
108 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
116 Things to remember when driving
121 BMW M6 Engineering

Navigation
124 Starting navigation system
126 Destination entry
138 Destination guidance
147 What to do if …

Entertainment
150 On/off and tone
154 Radio
161 Satellite radio
164 CD player and CD changer
170 AUX-In connection
171 USB/audio interface

Communications
176 Telephoning
191 BMW Assist

Mobility
200 Refueling
202 Wheels and tires
208 Under the hood
214 Maintenance
216 Replacing components
224 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
232 Technical data
236 Short commands of voice command system
240 Everything from A to Z

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have made every effort to ensure that you are able to find what you need in this Owner's Manual as quickly as possible. The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

CarManuals2.com

Should you want to sell your BMW some day, please remember to pass on the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be happy to advise you.

You can find information on BMW, e.g. technology, on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.◀

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.◀

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.◀

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional extras, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice command system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice command system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When purchasing your BMW, you have decided in favor of a model with individualized equipment and features. This Owner's Manual describes all equipment offered for the BMW M6.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. In isolated cases it is possible that the features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Have corresponding work on your BMW performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

California Proposition 65 Warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.
Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.
When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.
BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.
BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.
BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants.
Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.
Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

carManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

CarManuals2.com

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone (800) 831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you and your dealer or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

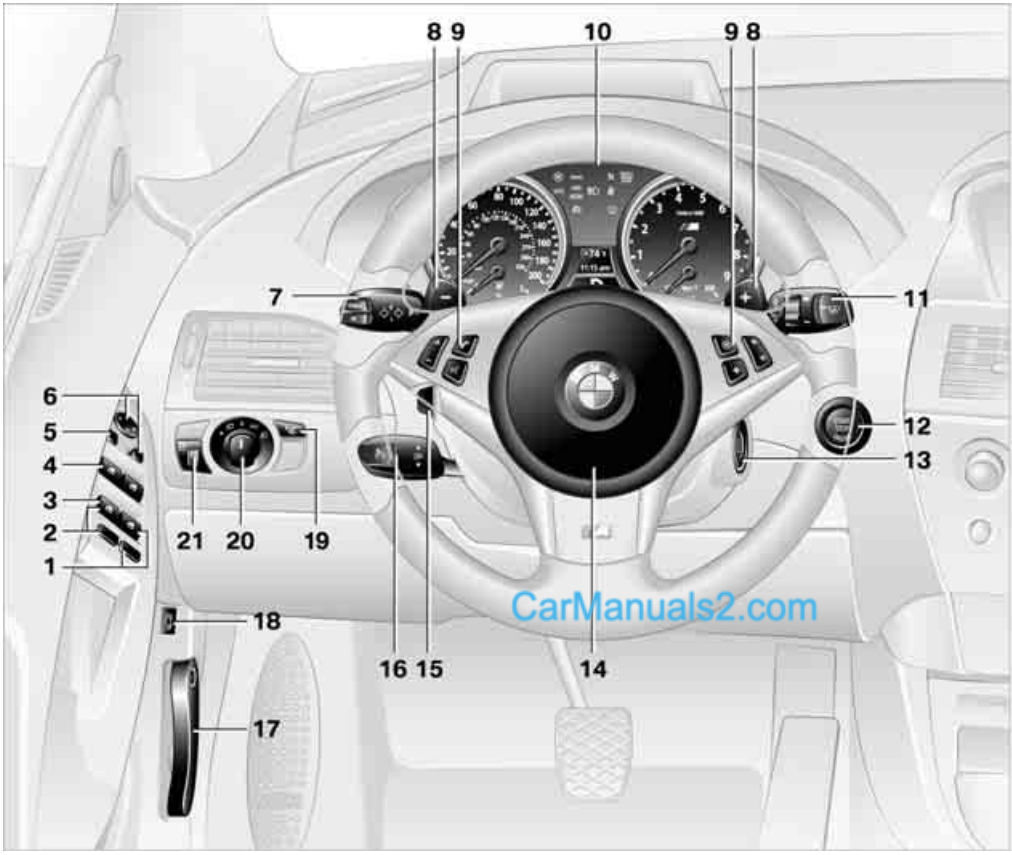
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

CarManuals2.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Convertible: opening and closing rear window 39

2 Convertible: opening and closing windows together 39

3 Convertible: opening and closing rear windows 38

4 Opening and closing front windows 38

5 Folding exterior mirrors in and out* 51

6 Adjusting exterior mirrors 51
Automatic curb monitor 52

7
- Turn signals 65
- High beams, headlamp flasher 98
- High-beam assistant* 98
- Parking lamps* 98
- CHECK Check Control 74
- BC Computer 70

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

8 Shift paddles 63

9 Buttons on steering wheel

Mobile phone* 176

- ▷ Press: accepting and ending call, starting dialing* for selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected
- ▷ Press and hold: redialing

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice command system* 23

Changing radio station 154
Selecting music track 165

Scrolling in phone book and in lists with stored phone numbers

MDrive, call up individual settings 53

Individually programmable 53

CarManuals2.com

10 Instrument cluster 12

11 Windshield wipers 66

Rain sensor 66

12 START STOP ENGINE Starting/stopping engine and switching ignition on/off 59

13 Ignition lock 59

14 Horn, entire surface

15 Steering wheel heater* 52

Steering wheel adjustment 52

16 Cruise control 67

17 Releasing hood 208

18 Opening luggage compartment lid 34

19 Head-Up Display* 93

20 Parking lamps 96

Low beams 96
Welcome lamps 96
Automatic headlamp control* 96
Daytime running lamps* 97
Welcome lamps 96
Adaptive Head Light* 98
High-beam assistant* 98

21 Instrument lighting 100

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Instrument cluster

1 Indicator lamps for turn signals

2 Speedometer

3 Indicator and warning lamps 13

4 Tachometer 69

5 Engine oil thermometer 70

6 Display for
- ▷ Computer 70
  Engine oil level 210
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 74
- ▷ Speed of cruise control 68

7 Display for
- ▷ Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 63
- ▷ Engine oil level for manual transmission 210
- ▷ ⚠ Check Control message present 74
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 69
- ▷ Date and remaining travel distance for service requirements 72
- ▷ High-beam assistant* 98

8 Fuel gauge 70

9 Resetting trip odometer 69

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Indicator and warning lamps

The concept

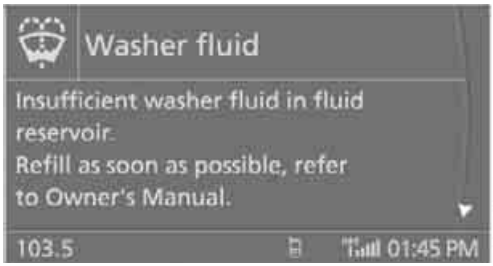
CarManuals2.com

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

When the engine is started or the ignition is switched on, some lamps are checked for proper operation and light up briefly in the process.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



You can consult Check Control for additional information, e.g. regarding the cause of a malfunction or the appropriate actions to take, refer to page 74.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp lights up.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps signal particular functions:

Parking lamps/low beams 96

High beams/headlamp flasher 98

Handbrake applied 61

Handbrake applied for Canadian models

Lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive and braking forces for maintaining vehicle stability 83

MDrive 53

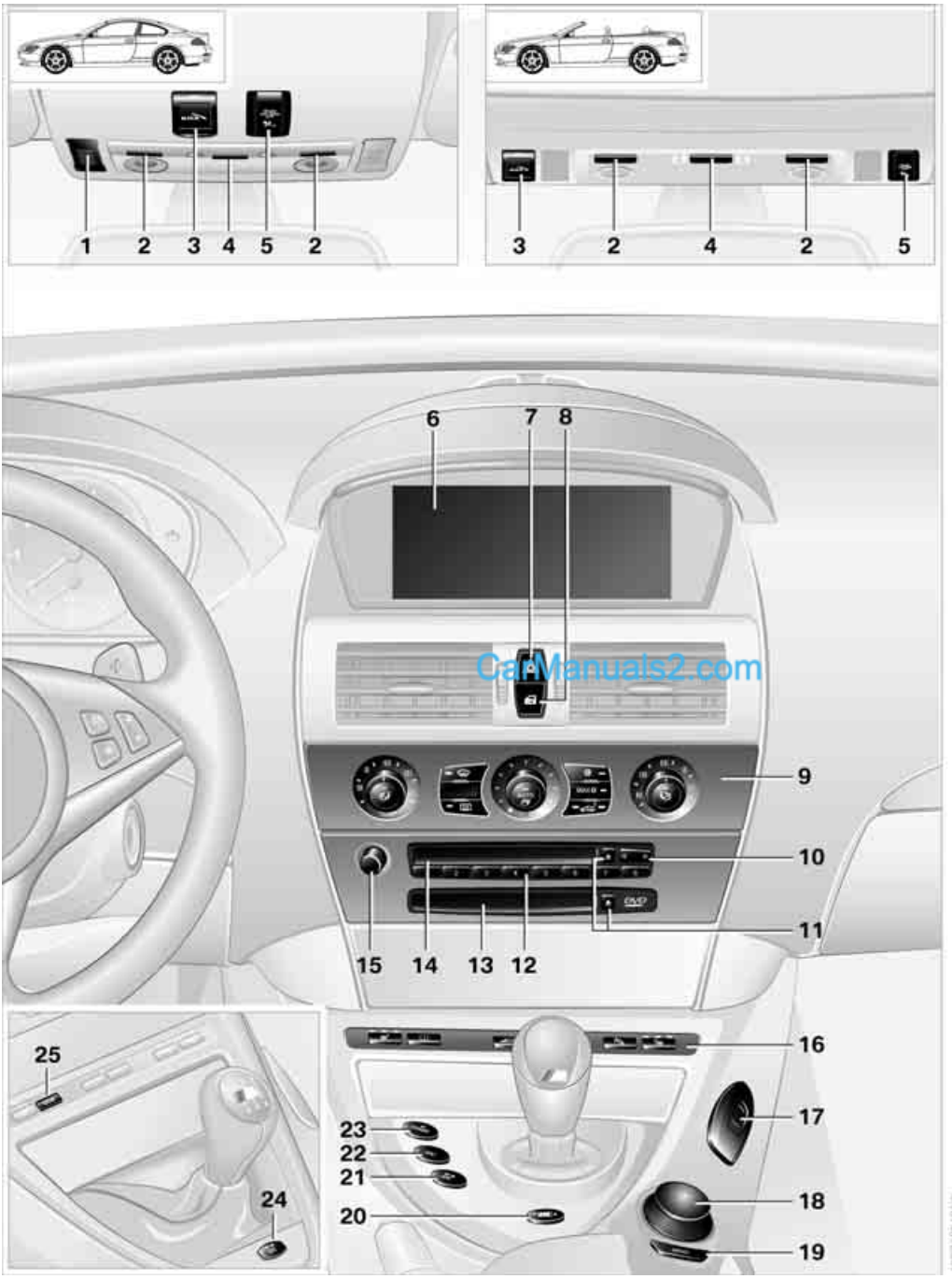
M Dynamic Mode 83

Engine malfunction with deteriorating emissions levels 215

Engine malfunction with deteriorating emissions levels for Canadian models 215

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1 Microphone for hands-free mode for telephone*
and voice command system* 23
Convertible: microphone on steering column

2 Reading lamps 100

3 SOS: initiating an emergency request 224

4 Interior lamps 100

5 Passenger airbag status lamp 91

6 Control Display 16

7 Hazard warning flashers

8 Central locking system 32

9 Automatic climate control 101

TEMP Temperature setting, left/right 101

AUTO Automatic air distribution and volume 102

Cooling function 104

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode 104

MAX Maximum cooling 104

REST Residual heat mode 105

OFF Switching off automatic climate control 105

Air volume 103

Defrosting windows and removing condensation 103

Rear window defroster 101

10 Changing
- ▷ radio station 165 165
- ▷ track 165 165

11 Ejecting
- ▷ navigation DVD* 124
- ▷ audio CD 165 165

12 Programmable memory/direct selection buttons 21

13 Drive for navigation DVD in Professional* navigation system 124

14 Drive for audio CDs 165 165

15 Entertainment sound output on/off and adjusting volume 165 165

16
Heated seats 51

PDC Park Distance Control* 81

Flat Tire Monitor 86

Convertible: opening the convertible top 41

Convertible: closing the convertible top 41

17 Bracket for cup holder* 111

18 Controller 16
Turn, press or move horizontally in four directions

19 Opening start menu on Control Display 17

20 Drivelogic of Sequential Manual Transmission 63

21 EDC Electronic Damper Control for Sequential Manual Transmission 85

22 DSC Dynamic Stability Control for Sequential Manual Transmission 83

23 M Engine Dynamic Control POWER for Sequential Manual Transmission 64

24 EDC Electronic Damper Control for manual transmission* 85

25 MDM
- ▷ M Dynamic Mode for manual transmission* 83
- ▷ Switching DSC on and off in manual transmission* 84

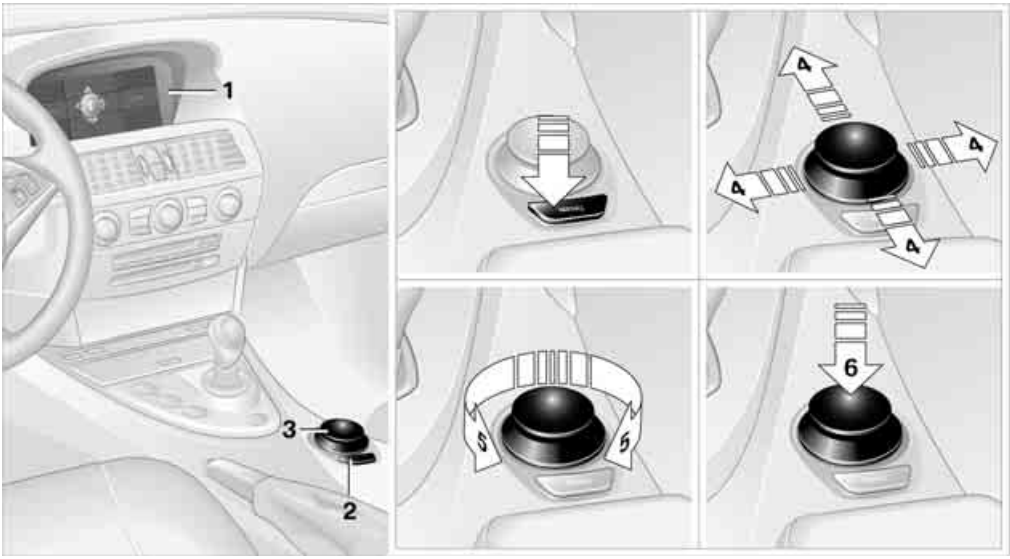
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive combines the functions of a multitude of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



1 Control Display

2 **MENU** button
Opening the start menu

3 Controller
You can use the controller to select menu items and change settings by:

- ▷ moving in four directions, arrows **4**
- ▷ turning, arrow **5**
- ▷ pressing, arrow **6**

To avoid becoming distracted and unnecessarily endangering both your own vehicle's occupants and other road users, never attempt to use the controls or make entries unless traffic and road conditions allow.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Menu overview

Communication

- Telephone*
- BMW Assist* or TeleService*

Navigation or onboard information

- Navigation system*
- Onboard info, e.g. for displaying of the average fuel consumption

Entertainment

- Radio
- CD player and CD changer*

Climate

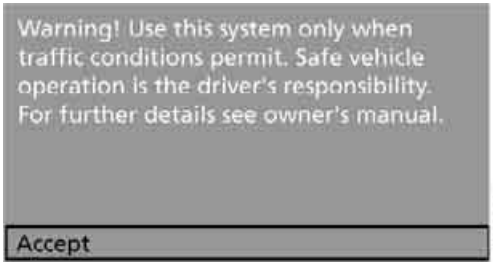
- Vent settings
- Automatic programs
- Parked car operation

i menu

- Switching off the Control Display
- Tone and display settings
- Settings for your vehicle, e.g. for MDrive, or settings for the central locking system
- Display of maintenance intervals and deadlines for legally mandated inspections
- Settings for the telephone

Basic operation

From radio readiness, refer to page 59, the following message is shown on the Control Display:



To hide the message:
Press the controller.
This displays the start menu.

The message is automatically hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Start menu

You can call up all the functions of iDrive using five menu items.

Opening start menu

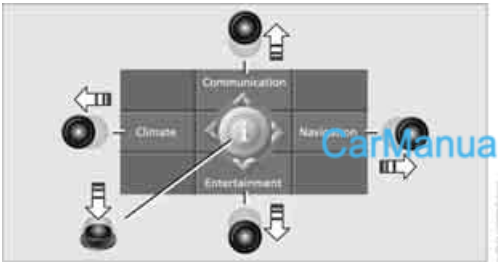
Press the **MENU** button.

To open the start menu from the i menu:

Press the **MENU** button twice.

CarManuals2.com

Opening menu items of start menu



From the start menu, you can call up the four menu items Communication, Navigation, Entertainment, and Climate by moving the controller left, right, forward, or back.

You can open the i menu by pressing the controller.

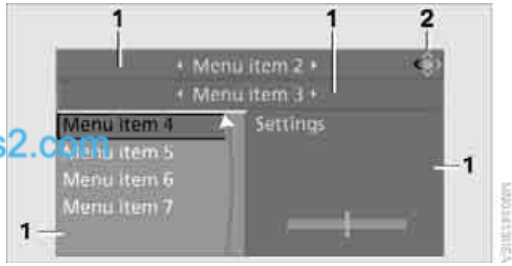
Comfort opening of menu items

Comfort opening offers you the option of:

- ▷ Opening a menu item of the start menu in the view last selected
- ▷ Direct changing between Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate without pressing the **MENU** button

To do so, move the controller in the corresponding direction and hold it for approx. 2 seconds.

Displays in menu



1 Each menu is divided into fields. The currently selected field appears brighter.

2 A symbol indicates the last selected menu item of the start menu:

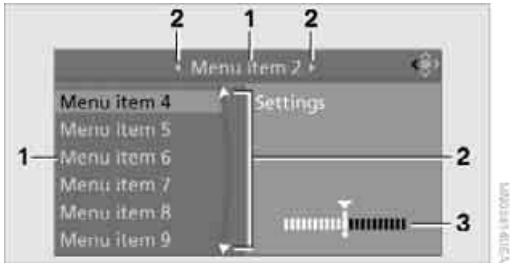
Communication

Navigation or onboard info

Entertainment

Climate

i menu



1 Menu items are usually grouped in horizontal or vertical lists.

2 Arrows indicate the possibility of accessing other menu items that are not currently visible.

3 Settings are displayed graphically or numerically.

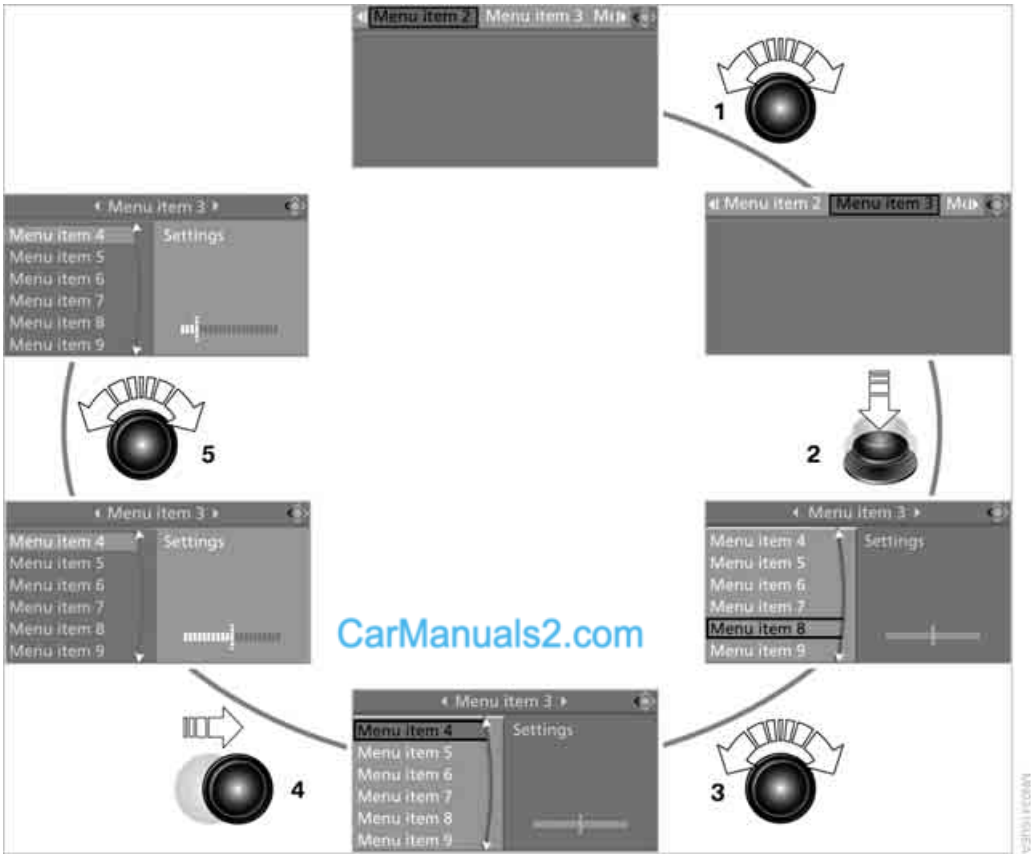
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Operating principle at a glance

Basic operation via iDrive is described in this view.

You can view the individual steps under Settings on Control Display, Setting time, refer to page 78.



1 Selecting menu item:
   - ▷ Turn controller; marking moves
   - ▷ Menu items shown in white can be selected by marking
2 Activating a menu item:
   - ▷ Press controller
   - ▷ New menu items are displayed or function is carried out
3 Selecting a menu item: refer to 1
4 Changing between fields:
   - ▷ Briefly move controller left, right, forward or back
   - ▷ Release controller
   - ▷ Active field appears lighter
5 Adjusting settings:
   - ▷ Turn controller
   - ▷ Graphic display, numerical value or text displays can be changed
   - ▷ Confirmation by changing field

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Status information

1 Display for:
   - ▷ Entertainment:
     Radio, CD
   - ▷ Telephone* in "Communication":
     Name of linked mobile phone, network search or no network
   - ▷ "BMW Assist"*:
     Existing voice connection with a service from BMW Assist

2 Entertainment sound output off

3 Station that transmits traffic information is received*:

   "TI":
   Traffic information for the navigation system can be received and transmission is switched on

CarManuals2.com

4 Display for:
   - ▷ New entries present in "Missed calls"*
   - ▷ ▲ Roaming active

5 Telephoning* is possible if the mobile phone is paired in the vehicle
   Reception strength of mobile phone network, dependent on mobile phone

6 Time

Other displays:
When Check Control information appears or entries are made via the voice command system*, the status information is temporarily hidden.

Assistance window*

Additional information appears in the assistance window:

- ▷ the computer or the trip computer
- ▷ the arrow or map view with navigation system*
- ▷ the current position

Selecting display

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Switching assistance window on/off

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.
2. Select "Assist. window off" and press the controller.

To switch on, change to the assistance window and press the controller.

Switching Control Display on/off

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Display off" and press the controller.

To switch on, press the controller.

Programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can save and run certain functions of iDrive on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons:

- ▷ Destinations of navigation
- ▷ Telephone, phone numbers
- ▷ Entertainment:
  - ▷ radio station
  - ▷ CD
  - ▷ CD compartment of CD changer*
  - ▷ AUX

The assignment of the programmable memory/ direct selection buttons is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Saving function

Destinations of navigation

1. Select navigation destination, e.g. in the destination list or the address book.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

Special features:

- ▷ With the destination guidance system and the map view started, the current destination is stored.
- ▷ During destination entry via a map, the coordinates at the cursor are stored, not the current destination.

Telephone, phone numbers

1. Enter the phone number or select it in a list of the stored phone numbers, e.g. of the A-Z list.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

If a name is assigned to the phone number, the name will also be stored.

CarManuals2.com

Entertainment

In the Entertainment menu, the sound source currently heard, e.g. a radio station, is stored, regardless of the selection on the Control Display.

1. Select the desired function, e.g. radio station or CD.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

If the vehicle is equipped with two drives, the current track is stored for CDs with compressed audio files.◀

Running function

Press the 1 ... 6 button.

When selecting a phone number, the connection is also established, or the destination guidance is started when a navigation destination is selected.

Displaying button assignment

You can display the assignment of the buttons by touching them with your finger. Please do not wear gloves when doing so. Touching with an object, e.g. a pen, does not function.

Displaying short info

Touch the 1 ... 6 button.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed.

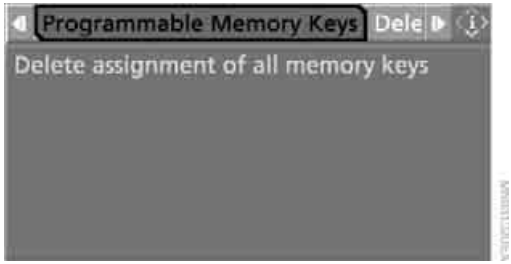
- Destination of navigation system
- Entertainment source
- Telephone, phone number
- Not assigned

Displaying detailed information

Touch the 1 ... 6 button longer.

Deleting button assignments

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Select "Programmable Memory Keys" and press the controller.



6. Select "Delete assignment of all memory keys" and press the controller.
7. Acknowledge with "Yes".

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Voice command system*

The concept

The voice command system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. This frees you of having to use the controller.

The voice command system transforms your spoken commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice command system includes a special microphone.

The microphone is located:

- ▷ Near the interior rearview mirror in the Coupe, refer to page 14
- ▷ On the steering column in the Convertible

Prerequisite

In order to enable identification of the commands to be spoken, use iDrive to set the language for the voice command system. Setting iDrive language, refer to page 80.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates the responses of the voice command system.

Voice commands

Activating voice command system

1. Press the button.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal tell you that the voice command system can respond to commands.

CarManuals2.com

2. Say the command.
   The command is displayed on the Control Display.

This symbol is shown on the Control Display when you can input additional commands.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

If no other commands are possible, then operate the equipment using iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice command

Press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹

Commands

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have the system read aloud the possible commands related to the selected menu item on the Control Display.
To have the system list the possible commands:

›Options‹

For example, if you have selected "CD", the system will read aloud the possible commands for operating the CD player and the CD changer*.

Opening help

›Help‹

CarManuals2.com

Using alternative commands

There are often several commands for running a function, e.g.:

›Radio on‹ or ›Turn radio on‹

Running functions directly with short commands

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected, refer to page 236.

Opening start menu

›Main menu‹

An example: selecting a track

1. Switch on Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Entertainment‹
   The system says:
   ››Entertainment‹‹

4. ›CD‹
   The system says:
   ››CD on‹‹

5. Press the button on the steering wheel.
6. Select a track, e.g.:
   ›Track 1‹
   The system says:
   ››Track 1‹‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Notes

▷ The mobile phone can also be operated with voice commands, refer to page 187.◀

For voice commands, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Say the commands and numbers smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses. This also applies to spelling when entering the destination.
- ▷ Always issue commands in the language of the voice command system.
- ▷ When selecting a radio station, use the usual pronunciation of the station name.
- ▷ For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice command system and do not use abbreviations.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows and convertible top closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- ▷ Avoid background noises in the vehicle while speaking.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. Its extensive array of features and accessories, both for driving and for your own safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Keys/remote control

1 Remote control with integrated key

2 Spare key

3 Adapter for spare key, in glove compartment

Remote control with integrated key

Each remote control contains a battery which is charged in the ignition lock while driving. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice a year to keep the battery charged. For comfort access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 38.

Depending on which remote control is detected by the vehicle during unlocking, different settings are activated and executed in the vehicle, refer to Personal Profile, page 29.

Information on the required maintenance is also stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in remote control, page 214.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to unlock the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Hotel function, refer to page 33
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 32
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid, refer to page 34

New remote controls

To obtain additional or replace lost keys, new remote controls with an integrated key are available at your BMW center.

Spare key

Store the spare key in a safe place such as your wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key of the remote control fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

The adapter is required so that the vehicle can be started with the spare key or radio readiness can be switched on.

Remove the adapter from the holder in the glove compartment and slide the spare key into the adapter before use.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set a number of functions of your BMW individually according to your preferences. Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use without you having to do anything. When the vehicle is unlocked, the corresponding remote control is detected and the settings stored for it are called up and carried out.

CarManuals2.com

This means that you will always find your BMW set to your own personal settings even if another person with his/her own remote control and settings has used the vehicle since the last time you drove it. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls.

Personal Profile settings

Details on the settings are provided on the specified pages.

- Behavior of the central locking system when unlocking vehicle, refer to page 30
- Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 33
- Programming button on steering wheel, refer to page 53
- Displays on Control Display:
  - 12h/24h clock mode, refer to page 78
  - Date format, refer to page 79
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 79
  - Units of measure for consumption, route/distances, temperature and pressure, refer to page 79
  - Language on the Control Display, refer to page 80
- Lighting settings:
  - Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 65
  - Welcome lamps, refer to page 96
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 97
  - Daytime running lamps*, refer to page 97
  - High-beam assistant*, refer to page 98
- Drivelogic driving program in the Sequential mode, refer to page 63
- Individual settings for MDrive, refer to page 53
- PDC Park Distance Control*: optical warning, refer to page 82
- Head-Up Display*: selection and brightness of display, refer to page 93
- Automatic climate control: for AUTO program and intensity, cooling function, and automatic recirculated air control/recirculated air mode, temperature, air distribution, temperature in the upper body region, refer to page 102
- Navigation system*: voice instructions for destination guidance, refer to page 124

The most recent settings for the following are also called up during unlocking:

- Programmable memory/direct selection buttons: selecting stored functions, refer to page 44
- Driver's seat, exterior-mirror and steering-wheel position, refer to page 47
- Audio sources: volume and tone settings, refer to page 151
- Radio: display of stored stations, refer to page 154
- Phone: adjusting volume, refer to page 182

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system is ready for operation whenever the driver's door is closed.

The system either locks or unlocks all of the following:

- ▷ Doors
- ▷ Compartment in the front center console
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid
- ▷ Fuel filler door

Operating from outside

- ▷ via the remote control
- ▷ via the door lock
- ▷ with comfort access* via the door handles

These actions operate the anti-theft system at the same time. It prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or door handles. The interior lamps and the courtesy lamps are also switched on and off with the remote control. The alarm system is armed/disarmed at the same time.
You can find more detailed information on the alarm system on page 35.

Operating from inside

Via the central locking button, refer to page 32. The fuel filler door and the compartment in the front center console are not locked, refer to page 32.

In the event of a serious accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. The hazard warning flashers and interior lamps are also switched on.

Opening and closing: Using remote control

⚠ Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

CarManuals2.com

Unlocking

Press the button.

You can set how the vehicle is unlocked. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Unlock button" and press the controller.
8. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Press the button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"*
     Press the button once to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler door.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.

9. Press the controller.

Comfort opening mode

Press and hold the button:

▷ Coupe: the windows are opened.

▷ Convertible: the windows and the convertible top are opened.

Watch the convertible top during the opening process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the button stops the operation.◀

Locking doors

Press the LOCK button.

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀

Switching on interior lamps

With vehicle locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system in case of danger:

Press the button for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off alarm: press any button.

Opening luggage compartment lid

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage compartment lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

A previously locked luggage compartment lid is also locked again after closing. Coupe: during opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure there is sufficient clearance.◀

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Confirmation" and press the controller.

7. Select the desired signal.
8. Press the controller.
   The signal is activated.

Malfunction

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. Should the remote control fail to operate due to interference of this kind, unlock and lock the vehicle via the door lock using a key.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

If it is no longer possible to lock the vehicle using the remote control, then the battery is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 28.

For US owners only

CarManuals2.com

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS
LX8CAS2

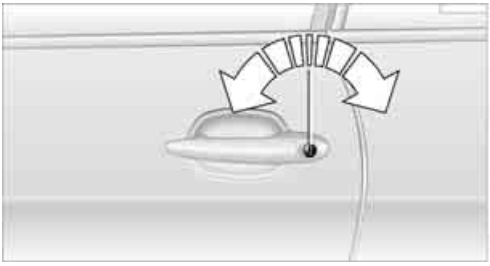
Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Using door lock

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀



When unlocking

1. Turning the key once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler door.
2. A second turn of the key unlocks the passenger door and luggage compartment lid.

Convenient operation

You also have the option of operating the windows and the convertible top on the Convertible from the driver's door lock.

Turn and hold the key in the positions for unlocking or locking.

Keep a close eye on the closing process and also on the opening process of the convertible top to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can turn a key all the way to the right or left in the door lock to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Opening and closing: from inside

This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the luggage compartment lid, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler door remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.

7. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Relock door if not opened"
     The central locking system locks again after a short time if no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after driving"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle as soon as you start to drive.
8. Press the controller.
   The setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening

- ▷ Either unlock both doors at the same time with the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ pull the door handle for each door twice: the first pull unlocks the door, and the second one opens it.

Locking

- ▷ Use the central locking button to lock both of the doors simultaneously, or
- ▷ press down the lock button of a door.
  To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

⚠ Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Hotel function

The hotel function locks the compartment in the front center console and the luggage compartment lid separately and disconnects them from the central locking system. If you hand over the remote control without the integrated key, refer to page 28, e.g. at a hotel, then this prevents access to the luggage compartment and to the compartment in the front center console.

Turn the key to the right, refer to illustration, until the key slot points in the direction of travel and then remove:
The hotel function is activated after subsequent locking or unlocking of the vehicle. The system locks the luggage compartment lid and the compartment in the front center console and disconnects them from the central locking system.

Unlocking manually

In order to manually unlock the compartment in the front center console in the event of an electrical malfunction, turn the key all the way to the right until it reaches the stop.

▷ If unlocking was manual, return the lock to the home position, i.e. all the way back to the left, before reactivating the hotel function.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Doors

Automatic soft closing*

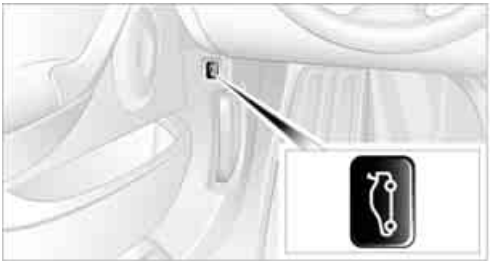
To close the doors, merely push them gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise injuries may result.◀

Luggage compartment lid

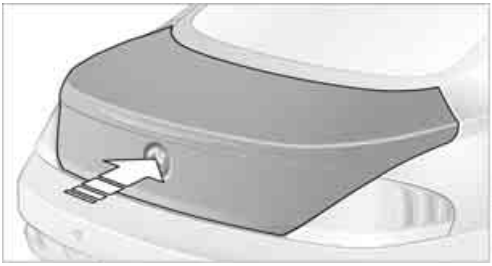
During opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure there is sufficient clearance.◀

Opening from inside



Press the button:
The luggage compartment lid opens, provided that it is not locked or the hotel function is not activated, refer to the above section.

Opening from outside



Press the upper half of the BMW emblem or press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the luggage compartment lid opens.

Convertible: if the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened, refer to page 41.◀

CarManuals2.com

Unlocking manually

The luggage compartment lid lock is located under the BMW emblem. All keys, refer to page 28, fit the luggage compartment lid lock.

Turn the key toward the right up to the stop: the luggage compartment lid opens.

If you use the lock to open the luggage compartment lid while the alarm system is armed, the alarm will be triggered. To prevent this, you should deactivate the alarm beforehand.
If the alarm has been triggered accidentally, switch off the alarm, refer to page 35.◀

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid make it easier to pull down.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

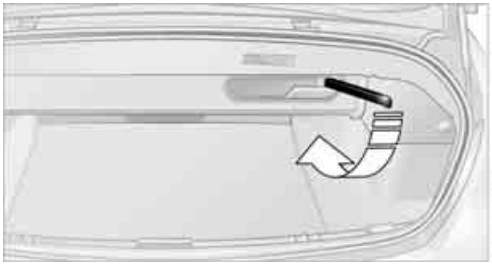
Emergency release

Pull the lever in the luggage compartment. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.

Luggage compartment

There are four lashing eyes on the inner corners of the luggage compartment for securing luggage nets* or securing straps to fix luggage in position.
Also refer to Securing cargo, page 119.

Convertible: increasing luggage compartment capacity



With the convertible top closed, you can increase the luggage compartment capacity: To do so, unfold the handle and press it downward in the direction of travel, refer to arrow. This moves the convertible top compartment floor into the raised position.

Before opening the convertible top, carry out this procedure in reverse order.

▷ The convertible top cannot be opened if the convertible top compartment floor is in the raised position.◀

CarManuals2.com

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- ▷ To the opening of a door, the hood, or the luggage compartment lid
- ▷ To movements in the vehicle interior: interior motion sensor, refer to page 36
- ▷ To changes in the vehicle's tilt if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle
- ▷ To interruptions in battery voltage

Unauthorized operations are briefly signaled by the alarm system:

- ▷ by triggering an acoustic alarm
- ▷ by switching on the hazard warning flashers
- ▷ by flashing the high beams

Arming and disarming alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

You can open the luggage compartment lid, even with the system armed, by using the button of the remote control, refer to page 31. When the luggage compartment lid is closed, it is once again locked and monitored.

Switching off alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 30, or
- ▷ insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Indicator lamp displays

- The indicator lamp below the interior rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking: the doors, hood or luggage compartment lid are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. However, the interior motion sensor is not activated.
- After the vehicle is unlocked, the indicator lamp goes out: no manipulation or attempted intrusions have been detected in the period since the system was armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted into the ignition lock, however for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes: an attempted entry has been detected in the period since the system was armed.

Tilt alarm sensor

Monitors the inclination of the vehicle. The alarm system reacts, for example, if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle.

Interior motion sensor

Coupe:
The condition for proper operation of the interior motion sensor is closed windows.

Convertible:
Monitors the interior up to the height of the seat cushions. This means that the alarm system, including the interior motion sensor, is armed even if the convertible top is open. Falling objects, e.g. leaves, can trigger false alarms, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time.
This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- In two-level garages
- When transporting on car-carrying trains, by sea or on a trailer
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle

carManuals2.com

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

Comfort access*

Comfort access allows you to access your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. It is sufficient to carry the remote control with you, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the associated remote control in the immediate vicinity or in the interior.

Comfort access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking vehicle
- Comfort closing with Coupe
- Opening luggage compartment lid separately
- Starting engine

Functional requirement

- The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid can only be locked if the vehicle detects that the remote control you are carrying is outside the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the vehicle detects that the remote control is located in the vehicle.

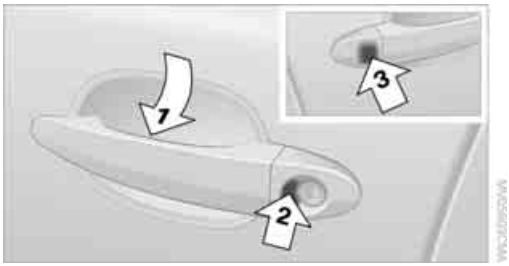
Comparison with ordinary remote control

You can control the functions mentioned previously with the comfort access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Before doing so, please familiarize yourself with the information on opening and closing, starting on page 28.

The special features when using comfort access are described below.

Should a short delay occur when opening or closing the windows or the convertible top, the system is checking whether a remote control is located in the vehicle. Please repeat opening or closing if necessary.◀

Unlocking



Grasp a door handle fully, refer to arrow **1**, but do not touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3** when doing so. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking

- On the driver's door, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **2**, with a finger for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.
- On the front passenger door, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **3**, with the back of your hand for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

Please make sure that the ignition and all electronic systems/consumers are switched off before locking to save the battery.◀

Coupe: comfort closing

Hold a finger or the back of your hand against the surface, arrow **2** or **3**, but do not grasp the door handle while doing so.

The windows are closed.

Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Removing the hand from the door handle stops the closing process immediately.◀

Convertible: window and convertible top operation

From radio readiness switched on, the windows can be opened and closed, and with the vehicle stopped the convertible top, when a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle.

Opening luggage compartment lid separately

CarManuals2.com

Press the upper half of the BMW emblem. This corresponds to pressing the button.

If a remote control accidentally left in the luggage compartment is detected inside the locked vehicle after the luggage compartment lid has been closed, then the luggage compartment lid opens again. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

By pressing the Start/Stop button, you switch on the radio readiness, refer to page 59.

When doing so, do not depress the brake or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine will start immediately.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Starting engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition if a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle. It need not be inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 59.

If you take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle with the engine running, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. As long as no remote control is detected, it is only possible to restart the engine within approx. 10 seconds after it is switched off.

Malfunction

The comfort access function may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this occurs, then open or close the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with a key. To start the engine after this, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

When unlocking or locking/comfort closing do not simultaneously grasp the door handle and touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3**. Otherwise, you may limit the function.

Replacing battery

CarManuals2.com

If the battery of the remote control is dead, a message will appear in the Control Display.

1. Remove integrated key from remote control, refer to page 28.

2. Remove cover.
3. Insert new battery with positive side facing upward.
4. Press cover closed.

Return used battery to a recycling collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows and keep them in your field of vision until they are shut.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle; otherwise, children could, for example, operate the windows and injure themselves.◀

Coupe: opening, closing

▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open for as long as you hold down the switch.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Convertible: opening, closing

For information on window operation with comfort access, also refer to page 37.

To close the side windows while the vehicle is being driven, always close the rear windows first or all four windows simultaneously; otherwise, the windows cannot close tightly at higher speeds.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Individually

- ▷ Press switch to resistance point:
  The window continues to open for as long as you hold down the switch.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch. The rear windows cannot be closed automatically.

Together

1. Briefly press button **1**:
   The LEDs in button **1** and switch **2** light up for approx. 10 seconds.
2. Press switch **2**:
   - ▷ Down to the resistance point:
     All windows, including the rear window, continue to open as long as you press the switch.
     You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.
   - ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
     All windows open automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

Briefly press button **1** again to deactivate the function. The LEDs go out.

Rear window

1. Briefly press button **1**:
   The LEDs in button **1** and switch **2** light up for approx. 10 seconds.
2. Press switch **2**:
   - ▷ Down to the resistance point:
     The rear window continues to open for as long as you hold down the switch.
     You can close the rear window in the same manner by pulling the switch.
   - ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
     The rear window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

Briefly press button **1** again to deactivate the function. The LEDs go out.

▷ The rear window opens and closes automatically when you open or close the convertible top.◀

For information on using the convenient operation mode at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 31 or 32.

Coupe: for information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 37.

CarManuals2.com

After switching off ignition

You can still operate the windows with the remote control removed or the ignition switched off for approx. 1 minute, as long as neither of the doors has been opened.

CarManuals2.com

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the window's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows, otherwise the pinch protection system will be impaired.
Convertible: the rear side windows and rear window are not equipped with a pinch protection system. Therefore, watch the rear side windows and the rear window during closing, otherwise injuries can occur.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside or if, for example, ice on the window prevents normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The pinch protection system is limited and the window opens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold again within approx. 4 seconds. The window closes without the pinch protection system.

Convertible: top

The fully automatic convertible top combines secure weather protection with simple and convenient operation.

Here are a few tips for getting the maximum pleasure from your Convertible:

- ▷ It is advisable to close the convertible top when the vehicle is parked. The closed convertible top not only protects the passenger compartment from unforeseen weather damage, it also provides a certain amount of protection from theft. Nonetheless, even if the convertible top is closed, only keep valuables in the locked luggage compartment.
- ▷ Do not attach luggage rack systems to the convertible top.

In order to avoid damage, do not move the convertible top at temperatures below +14 °F/–10 °C.
Do not leave the convertible top in its storage compartment for longer than one day when wet; otherwise, damage from moisture can occur.
Do not place any objects on the convertible top; otherwise, if the top were to be operated, these objects could fall off and lead to damage or injury.
Never move the convertible top when the roll-over protection system is raised.
Driving without having completed the opening or closing action can lead to damage or injury.
Do not place hands in the top mechanism during the opening and closing action. Keep children away from the travel path of the convertible top.
For safety reasons, do not move the convertible top unless the vehicle is stationary.◀

If you have initiated top movement with the vehicle at a stop and then start to drive, e.g. at a traffic light, you can continue the initiated operation up to a speed of 20 mph/30 km/h:
To do so, press and hold the corresponding button.◀

Partial vacuums that occur at higher speeds in the passenger compartment can make the convertible top flap. Use the automatic climate control to increase the air volume so that a partial vacuum in the vehicle does not occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Prior to opening and closing

- ▷ Read the safety precautions above carefully and comply with them fully.
- ▷ Ensure that the convertible top compartment floor in the luggage compartment is folded down, refer to page 35, as otherwise the convertible top cannot be opened.
- ▷ Make sure that the luggage compartment lid is closed.

Opening and closing

For information on top operation with comfort access, also refer to page 37.

From radio readiness, refer to page 59, with the vehicle stationary:

▷ To avoid putting excessive strain on the battery, only move the convertible top when the engine is running if possible.
Before closing the convertible top, remove foreign objects from the windshield frame, as these might inhibit closing of the convertible top.◀

CarManuals2.com

1 Closing

2 LED

3 Opening

▷ When the button for operating the convertible top is pressed, the side windows move downward slightly and the rear window is lowered completely.
If you hold down the button after the LED **2** goes out, then the windows travel upward again.
If the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀

LED

In the following situations, in addition to the LED, a message is displayed on the Control Display and an acoustic signal may sound:

- ▷ During convertible top operation, the LED lights up green. It goes out as soon as the opening or closing action is finished.
- ▷ If the LED flashes red when you release the button, the opening or closing action has not yet finished.
- ▷ If the LED lights up red when the button is pressed, either the convertible top compartment floor in the luggage compartment is in the raised position or a malfunction has occurred. The convertible top cannot be moved.

Interruption

The automatic sequence of movements is interrupted if the button for top operation is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction by pressing the appropriate button.
If the opening or closing action is interrupted for a longer period, the convertible top remains in that position for approx. 15 minutes before it slowly moves to a stable position.

⚠ A convertible top which is not completely opened or closed presents a danger.
Do not interrupt and continue the closing action several times in succession; otherwise, the top mechanism can be damaged.◀

▷ If the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀

Convenient operation with remote control and via door lock

Refer to pages 31 and 32.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Closing manually

Only close the convertible top manually if absolutely necessary; never open it manually. The convertible top compartment lid cannot be locked in the event of an electrical malfunction and would open while the vehicle is being driven.
Improper handling can lead to damage.◀

Before closing

1. Open luggage compartment lid.
2. Take the Allen wrench and the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 216.
3. Pry out the two buttons in the luggage compartment with the screwdriver and then pull firmly. This unlocks the convertible top compartment lid.

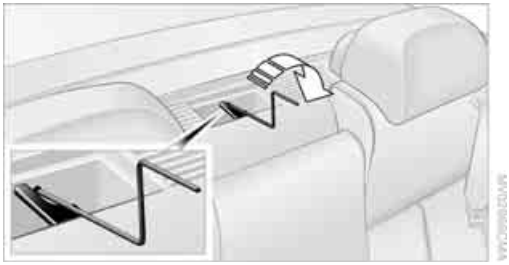
4. Close luggage compartment lid.

   During manual convertible top operation, the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀
5. Completely open the side windows and the rear window.
   If the rear window cannot be opened using the switch, it must be lowered manually.

Opening rear window manually

1. Pry out the cover between the rear head restraints. To do so, place the screwdriver as close as possible to the locking elements, as shown in the illustration.

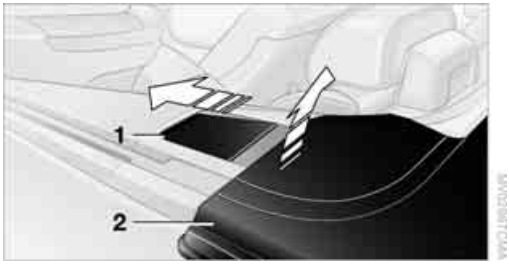
2. Insert the Allen wrench as far as possible into the opening and turn firmly in the direction indicated by the arrow until the rear window is completely open.



Closing

Perform the following work steps with the assistance of a second person and with the doors open, otherwise injury and damage to the convertible top can occur.◀

1. Push the cover **1** on the left and right of the side panel forward. Reach into the resulting openings and raise the convertible top compartment lid **2** as far as it will go.



2. Grasp the top with both hands at the left and right side frame, arrow **3**.

CarManuals2.com

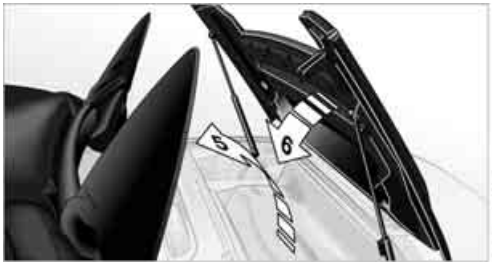
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Only lift out the top by the side frame, otherwise the top may be damaged.◀

3. Together with the other person, pull the two sides of the convertible top out simultaneously and pivot forward. When doing so, keep the convertible top compartment lid open, arrow **4**, e.g. with your shoulder.

Do not carry out the next operation, raising top ends, until the top has been swung forward, otherwise damage can occur.◀

4. Raise the two convertible top ends as far as possible, arrow **5**, and close the convertible top compartment lid, arrow **6**.



5. Fold the top ends down onto the convertible top compartment lid.

6. From the interior, take out the cover in the center of the front top frame; use a screwdriver if necessary.

7. Insert the Allen wrench into the opening provided.

8. From the outside, both persons pull the front frame of the convertible top downward, as simultaneously as possible on the two sides.

9. Turn the Allen wrench in the direction of the arrow until the front convertible top frame is locked to the windshield frame.
The rear convertible top ends are automatically pressed onto the convertible top compartment lid and close tightly with tension.

CarManuals2.com

10. If necessary, close the rear window again manually in the same way as above.

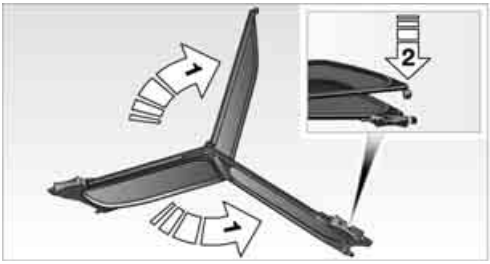
Wind deflector*

The wind deflector keeps the air movement in the passenger compartment to a minimum when the convertible top is open, thus enabling pleasant driving even at higher speeds.

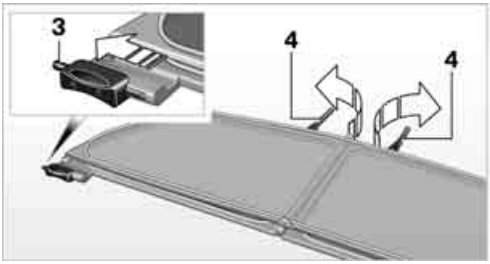
The wind deflector is stowed in a protective sleeve in the luggage compartment. Short instructions for use are also provided on the protective sleeve.

Before installing

1. Remove the wind deflector from the protective sleeve and fold it open, refer to arrows **1**.



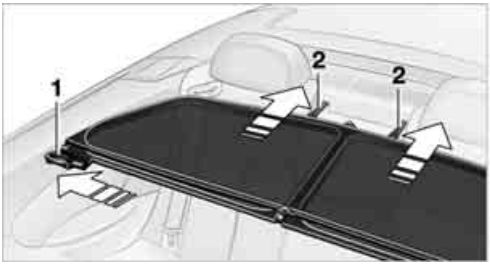
2. Press the upper and lower section together until the locking device engages, refer to arrow **2**.
3. Push the securing pin **3** out until it engages.



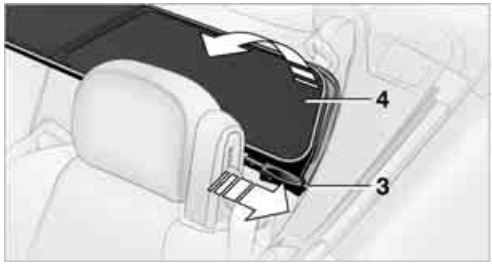
4. Unfold the rear mounts **4**.

Installing

1. Insert the securing pin **1** of the wind deflector into the appropriate opening on the right side of the vehicle.



2. Guide the rear mounts **2** into the receptacles provided.
3. Push the securing pin **3** on the left side into the appropriate opening until it snaps into place.



4. Fold up the upper half **4** of the wind deflector.

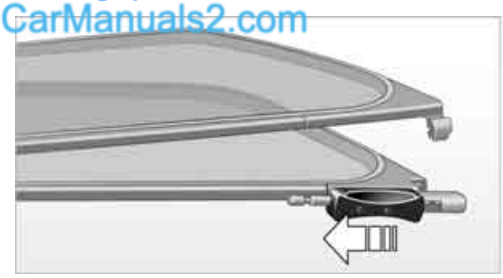
With wind deflector fitted: do not incline the front seat backrests too far backward if the seat is to be moved back to the end position. Otherwise, the wind deflector will be damaged.◀

Removing

The same as installing, but in reverse order.

Folding up

CarManuals2.com



1. Push the handle of the securing pin on the wind deflector on the left side of the vehicle all the way back and release the locking mechanism.
2. Fold in the upper and lower section.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In the interaction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seat position plays an important role in an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to follow the instructions contained in the following section.

CarManuals2.com

For additional information on Transporting children safely, refer to page 56.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always hold the steering wheel by its rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms in the event of airbag deployment.
No one and nothing is to come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the knee and front airbags are triggered.
Make sure that occupants do not rest their head on the side or head airbags; otherwise, injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.◀

Even if you adhere to all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 90.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise, there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 48.

Safety belt

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle has four seats that are each equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub against sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be pinched. Wear the safety belt without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly and pull the shoulder belt upward periodically to readjust the tension across your lap in order to avoid a reduction in the restraining effect of the safety belt.◀

Safety belts refer to page 50.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Seats

Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while operating the vehicle. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
On the front passenger side as well, do not tilt the backrest too far toward the rear. Failure to observe this precaution can prevent the belt from providing effective protection against injury, as the passenger could slide under the belt in an accident.◀

Please follow the instructions on damage to safety belts provided on page 51 and the information on the active front head restraints on page 48.

Convertible: with the wind deflector fitted, do not incline the front seat backrests too far backward if the seat is to be moved back to the end position. Otherwise, the wind deflector will be damaged.◀

Adjusting seat

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please follow the adjustment instructions on page 45.◀

1 Inclination
2 Longitudinal direction
3 Height
4 Backrest
5 Convertible: head restraints, refer to page 49

6 Coupe: backrest width
7 Lumbar support

Lumbar support

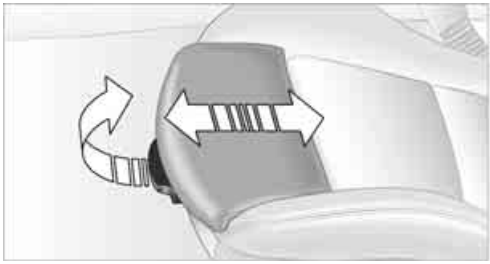
You can also adjust the contours of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

▷ Increase or decrease curvature:
Press front or rear of switch.

▷ Move curvature up or down:
Press top or bottom of switch.

Thigh support



You can also adjust the thigh support manually: Pull the lever and adjust the thigh support in the longitudinal direction.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory

You can store and select three different adjustment settings for the driver's seat, exterior mirrors and steering wheel.

The adjustments of the lumbar support and the backrest width are not stored in the memory.

Storing

1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, refer to page 59.
2. Adjust the desired seat, exterior mirror and steering-wheel positions.
3. Press the M button:
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3**:
   The LED goes out.

CarManuals2.com

Requesting

Do not request a position from the memory while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident from unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel.◀

Comfort mode

1. Open the driver's door after unlocking or switch on radio readiness, refer to page 59.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3**.

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

The adjusting procedure for the steering wheel is interrupted if you briefly press the switch for the steering wheel adjustment in any direction, refer to page 52.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch ignition on or off, refer to page 59.
2. Press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3** and maintain pressure until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the M button was pressed inadvertently: press the button again; the LED goes out.

Activating with remote control

The last positions of the driver's seat, external rearview mirrors, and steering wheel are stored for the remote key currently in use.

You can choose when the position is requested:

▷ Request when unlocking vehicle

▷ Request when opening driver's door

When using this feature, always make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty and unobstructed. If you fail to do so, any persons or objects behind the seat could be injured or damaged by a rearward movement of the seat.◀

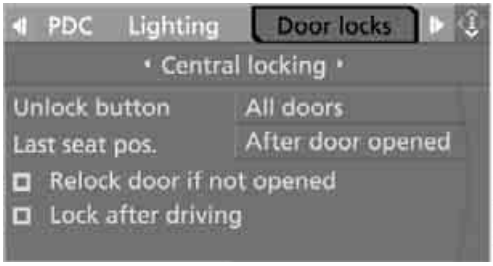
The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Last seat pos." and press the controller.
8. Select "After unlocking" or "After door opened".

9. Press the controller.

To cancel the request:
Select "Deactivated" and press the controller.

Front head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise, there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident. Only remove the head restraints if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Reinstall the head restraints before transporting passengers, as otherwise the head restraint cannot provide its protective function.◀

Active front head restraints

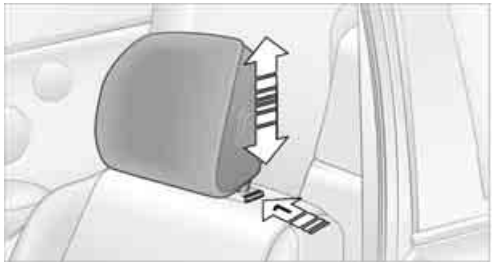
In the event of a rear-end collision of sufficient severity, the active head restraint reduces the distance to the head.

Do not use seat covers or head restraint covers that could impede the proper functioning of the active head restraint. Otherwise, there is no assurance that the active head restraint will perform its protective function and it is not possible to take advantage of its injury-reducing potential in the event of a rear-end collision.
Have the active head restraints reset after they are triggered in a rear-end collision. Only have this work carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, this safety equipment will not function properly.◀

Please contact a BMW center if you wish to have the front head restraints removed and installed.◀

Coupe

CarManuals2.com

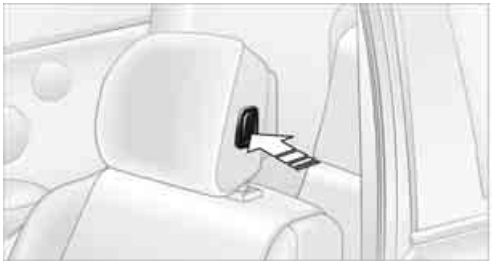


- To raise: pull the head restraint upward.
- To lower: slide the head restraint downward.

To reach the lowest position, press the button, refer to arrow **1**.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Front seats: Adjusting distance to the back of the head



▷ Forward: pull up.

▷ >Back: push the button and slide the head-rest cushion toward the rear.

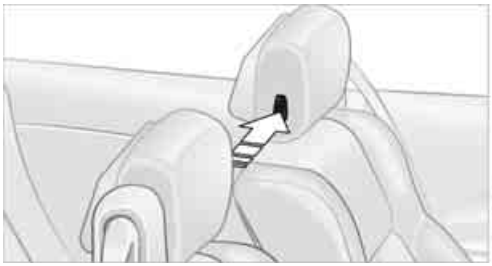
⚠ Do not place any objects behind the headrest cushion. Otherwise, you can impair the proper function of the head restraint.◀

Convertible

Adjusting height

Move the switch up or down.

Front seats: adjusting distance to the back of the head



▷ Forward: pull up.

▷ Back: push the button and slide the head-rest cushion toward the rear.

⚠ Do not place any objects behind the headrest cushion. Otherwise, you can impair the proper function of the head restraint.◀

Entering rear

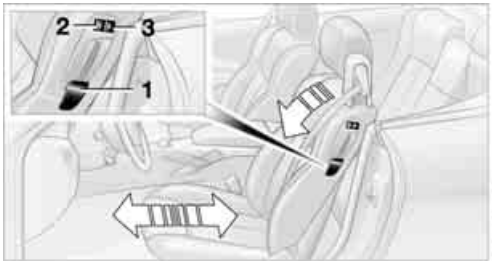
⚠ Before starting to drive, fold backrests back, otherwise there is the danger of accident due to an unexpected movement of the seat.◀

Coupe: releasing backrest

Pull the lever upward and fold the backrest forward.

The lever is designed so that the safety belt can be hooked onto it. This enables you to fasten the safety belt more conveniently.

Convertible: releasing backrest



The belt system integrated in the seat makes it easier to get in back.

carmanuals2.com

1. Pull lever **1** up and fold the backrest forward.
2. Press and hold button **2** until the seat has moved into the desired position.
3. After passengers have entered the rear, fold the backrest back and lock it in place.
4. Press and hold button **3** until the seat has moved back into its previous position. If you release button **3** before this, the seat stops in its current position.

You can lock the backrest in place when it is folded forward. This is useful, for example, when you get into the vehicle while it is parked on a hill. Press the backrest until it audibly locks into place. To fold it back, you do not need to use lever **1** to release it.◀

Lock backrest warning lamp:
Lights up when the backrest is not locked. At the same time, a message is shown on the Control Display.

Safety belts

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please follow the adjustment instructions on page 45.◀

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Fastening

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Releasing

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be in the correct position for adults of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted, refer to page 46.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger seat*

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. At the same time, an additional message appears on the Control Display. Please check whether safety belts are being worn correctly.

The safety belt reminder is operative at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the passenger seat.

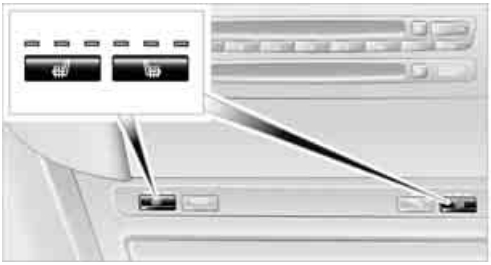
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Damage to safety belts

When subjected to strain due to an accident or in the event of damage, replace the safety belts, the belt tensioners, and any child restraint systems and have the belt anchor points checked. Have this work carried out only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel. Otherwise, correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed.◀

Heated seats



The temperature setting advances one step in its control sequence each time you press the button. The maximum temperature is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

The temperature is reduced and if need be, the heating is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The LEDs remain lit.

To switch off:
Press the button longer.

CarManuals2.com

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance of following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors; otherwise, there is an increased accident risk.◀

1 Adjusting

2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic curb monitor

3 Folding mirrors in and out*

Storing the mirror positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 47.

Adjusting manually

You can also adjust the mirrors manually by pressing against the outer edges of their mirror glass.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out

Pressing button **3** allows you to fold mirrors in and out up to a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. This is advantageous, for example, in car washes, narrow streets or for bringing mirrors that have been manually folded-in back into the correct position. Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Before going through a car wash, fold the mirrors in manually, or with button **3**, otherwise they could be damaged, depending on the width of the car wash system.◀

Automatic heating

Below a certain outdoor temperature, both exterior mirrors are heated whenever the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Tilting down passenger-side mirror – automatic curb monitor

Activating

1. Slide switch into the driver's side mirror position, arrow **1**.

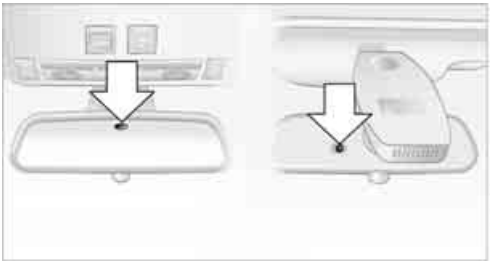
CarManuals2.com

2. Shift into reverse or move selector lever into position R.
   The mirror glass tilts downward somewhat on the passenger's side. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle – such as a curb – when parking, etc.

Deactivating

Slide switch into the passenger side mirror position, arrow **2**.

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature



This feature is controlled by two photocells in the inside rearview mirror. One is integrated within the mirror's lens, while the other is located at an offset position on the rear of the mirror housing.

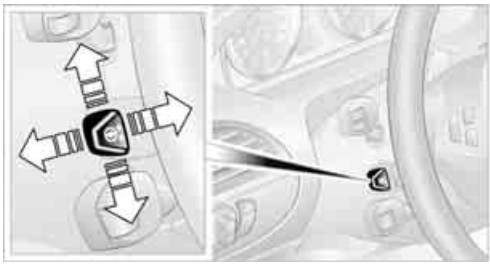
For trouble-free operation, keep the photocells clean and do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield.

Also do not attach stickers to the windshield in front of the mirror.

Steering wheel

Adjusting

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident as the result of unexpected movement.◀



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing the steering-wheel position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory, page 47.

Easy entry/exit

To make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle, the steering wheel temporarily moves into the uppermost position.

Steering wheel heating*

Press the button.

The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the steering wheel heater is switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Programmable button on steering wheel

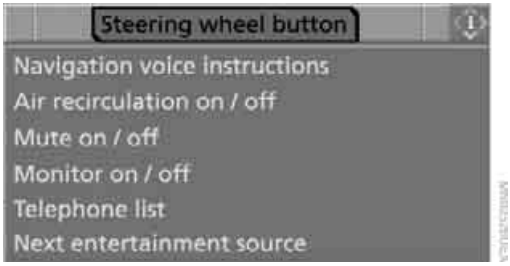
You can program the button individually.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Steering wheel button" and press the controller.



A list of different functions appears:

- ▷ "Navigation voice instructions"
  Voice instructions of the navigation system*
- ▷ "Air recirculation on / off"
  Permanently shutting off outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control on page 104
- ▷ "Mute on / off"
  Mutes the audio sources
- ▷ "Monitor on / off"
  Switches the Control Display on/off
- ▷ "Telephone list"*
  Display/hide phone book or last list of stored phone numbers displayed
- ▷ "Next entertainment source"
  Changes audio source

5. Select the desired function unit and press the controller.

Operating function

Press the button on the steering wheel.

If you have programmed "Navigation voice instructions" for the button:

- ▷ To switch voice instructions on/off:
  Press the button longer.
- ▷ To repeat the last voice instruction:
  Press the button.

MDrive

With MDrive you can configure several individual settings for your vehicle on the Control Display and activate them simultaneously with the button on the steering wheel.

Configuring settings

With the ignition switched on you can change the settings of MDrive on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

CarManuals2.com

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "MDrive" and press the controller.

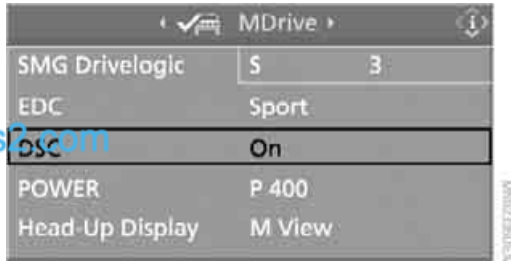
The functions contained in MDrive are displayed:

- "SMG Drivelogic"
  Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic: shifting modes and Drivelogic driving programs, refer to page 63
- "EDC"
  Programs of the Electronic Damping Control, refer to page 85
- "DSC"
  Dynamic Stability Control and M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 83
- "POWER"
  Programs of the M Engine Dynamic Control, refer to page 64
- "Head-Up Display"*
  Views of the Head-Up Display, refer to page 93

You can reset all settings for MDrive to their default values:

- "Reset to default"

4. Select the desired function.



5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to select the desired setting.

"Unchanged" retains the current setting made outside of MDrive.

7. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating settings

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up. The settings made on the Control Display for the functions contained in MDrive are active.

Pressing the button again deactivates MDrive.

If the indicator lamp flashes after pressing the button, MDrive was unable to react, as the ABS Antilock Brake System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is currently controlling the vehicle stability. Press the button again when the indicator lamp no longer flashes.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Even with MDrive activated, you can change individual settings outside MDrive, e.g. with the buttons in the center console. To reactivate all settings made for MDrive on the Control Display: press the button twice.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g. by opening the doors.◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back.

Children younger than 13 years of age or with a height under 5 ft/150 cm may only be transported in the rear in child restraint systems which correspond to the age, weight and height of the child. Otherwise, there is an increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, size and weight.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front, knee and side airbags on the passenger side must be deactivated before doing so. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child if the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint system.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 91.

Installing child restraint systems

Follow child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for the selection, installation and use of child restraint systems. Otherwise, the degree of protection they offer may be reduced.◀

On front passenger seat

After mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated, as otherwise there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags are triggered.◀

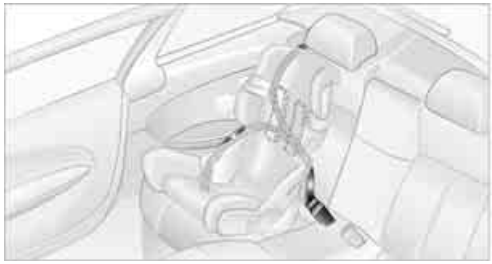
CarManuals2.com

Backrest width

Before mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the backrest width adjustment must be completely open.◀

1. Adjust the backrest width to the fully open position, refer to page 46.
2. Install child's seat.

Child seat security



All rear safety belts and the safety belt for the front passenger can be locked against pulling out to secure child restraint systems.

Locking safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull taut against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Unlocking safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

CarManuals2.com

LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchor and Tethers for CHildren.

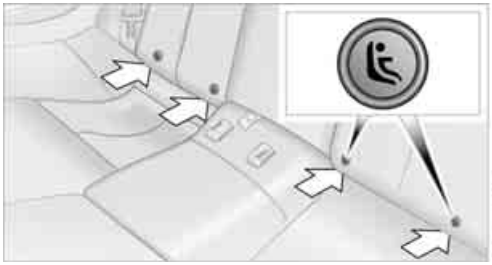
Follow the system manufacturer's instructions on installation and use of LATCH child restraint systems in order not to impair their protective function.◀

Anchor points for LATCH mounts

Before attaching the LATCH child's seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child restraint fixing system.

Make sure that both of the lower LATCH mounts have properly clicked into place and that the child restraint system is resting snugly against the backrest. Otherwise, the protective action may be impeded.◀

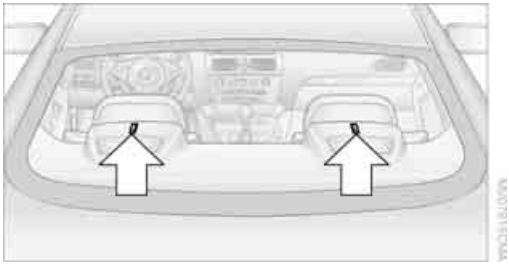
Rear seats



The mounting points for the LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Coupe: child restraint system with tether strap

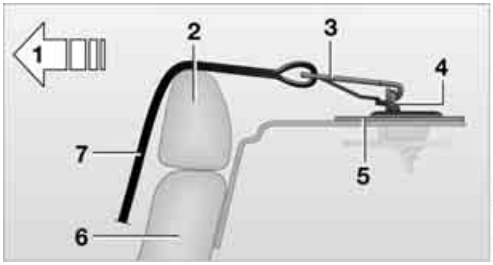
Only use the top tether-strap mounting points to secure child restraint systems, otherwise the mounting points could be damaged.◀



There are two additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows.

Placement of tether strap

Make sure that the tether strap is not routed over sharp edges and does not twist on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt may not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident.◀



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraints
3 Tether strap hook
4 Mounting point
5 Rear window shelf/luggage compartment floor
6 Backrest
7 Tether strap of child restraint system

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Before using the mounting points, fold the head restraint* into its raised position.

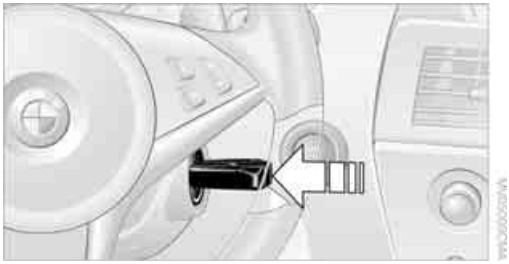
1. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
2. Guide the tether strap over the head restraint.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the mounting point.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Ignition lock

Inserting remote control into ignition lock



Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.

Radio readiness switches on.
Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation.

Comfort access*

With comfort access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock in exceptional cases, refer to page 36.

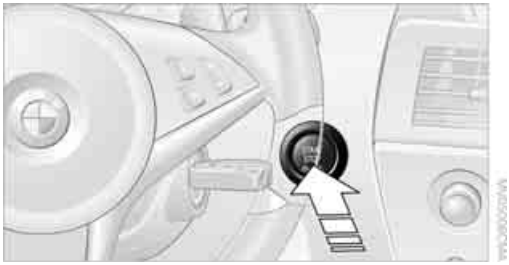
Removing remote control from ignition lock

Do not pull the remote control out of the ignition lock using force, as otherwise damage may result.◀

Before removing the remote control, first press it in as far as possible to release the locking device.

The ignition is switched off if it was still switched on.

Start/Stop button



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the radio readiness or the ignition on and off.

Manual transmission: the engine starts when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.
Sequential Manual Transmission: the engine starts when you press the Start/Stop button with the brake depressed and the selector lever in position P or N.◀

Radio readiness

CarManuals2.com

Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The last information of the computer selected is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off:

- when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- with comfort access* by touching the surface on the door handle, refer to Locking on page 37

Ignition on

All electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and the trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 69.

Please switch off the ignition and the electronic systems/consumers which are not required when the engine is not running to save the battery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

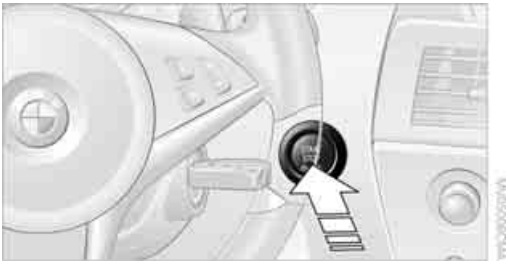
Starting engine

CarManuals2.com

Do not run the engine in closed rooms, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause unconsciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, as such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, shift into neutral* or move the selector lever into position N and firmly apply the handbrake, otherwise the vehicle can begin to roll.◀

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated starting attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned at all or is burned inadequately and there is a danger of overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.◀

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, drive off at a moderate engine speed.



Manual transmission*

Remote control in ignition lock or with comfort access in vehicle, refer to page 36.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Depress the clutch pedal and select the idling position.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

Remote control in ignition lock or with comfort access in vehicle, refer to page 36.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Place selector lever in position N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

If the engine does not start, shift back to the last selector lever position selected, refer to the instrument cluster display or the selector lever. Then select position N.
You cannot start off with the hood open.
When the engine is cold, the exhaust system has a slightly metallic undertone due to the system design.◀

Switching engine off

When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote control with you.
When parking, firmly apply the handbrake, as otherwise the vehicle could roll.◀

Manual transmission*

1. Press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle stopped.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Firmly apply the handbrake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 59.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

1. Firmly apply the handbrake.
2. Move selector lever into a drive position.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.
   If N is engaged when switching off the engine, this will be pointed out to you optically and acoustically.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 59.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Handbrake

The handbrake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

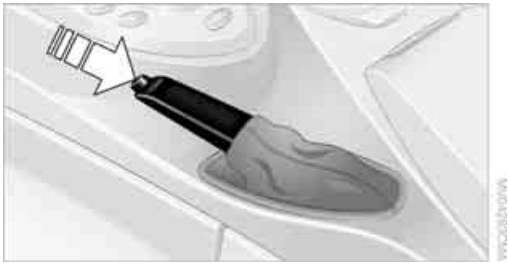
The indicator lamp lights up, and a signal also sounds when starting off. The handbrake is applied.

Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing

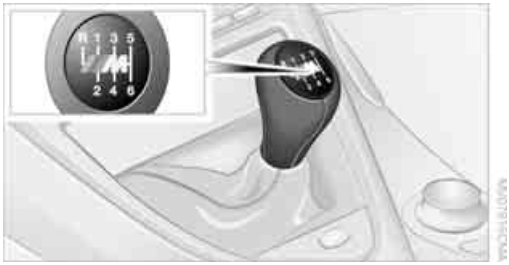


Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to apply the handbrake while the vehicle is in motion, do not pull it too firmly. In doing so, continuously press the button of the handbrake lever. Otherwise, too firm an application of the handbrake can lock up the rear wheels and cause the rear of the vehicle to swerve.◀

To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally engage the handbrake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the handbrake is applied.◀

Manual transmission*



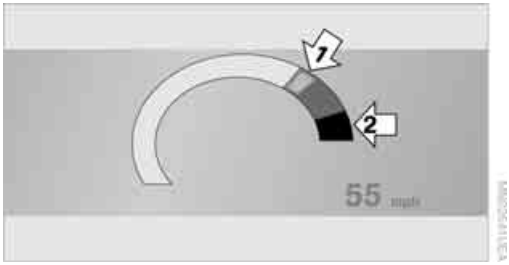
When shifting into 5th/6th gear, press the gearshift lever toward the right, otherwise an inadvertent shift into 3rd or 4th gear could lead to engine damage.◀

When engaging the 1st gear, a slight jolt may occur. This is operation-related and no reason for concern.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. Press the gearshift lever to the left, overcoming a slight resistance.

Shift lights



To achieve the best vehicle acceleration with a sporty driving style, shift lights in the Head-Up Display* indicate the optimum shifting point briefly before reaching the maximum rpm. Refer to Shift lights, page 64.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

The concept

The SMG Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic is an automated manual transmission in which an electrohydraulic system handles the clutching and gear changes.

The Sequential Manual Transmission is operated with the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

It offers the following functions:

- Choice of manual or automatic mode: Sequential mode or Drive mode
- Selection option between different driving programs, Drivelogic, refer to page 63
- Upshift display, shift lights, refer to page 64
- Automatic downshifting and prevention of incorrect shifting even in Sequential operation
- Automatic double clutching

Selector lever positions

- R: Reverse gear
- N: Neutral, idle
- ●: Drive position:
  - +: manual upshifting
  - –: manual downshifting
  - D/S: switch between Drive mode and Sequential mode

Shiftlock

Press the brake pedal before shifting out of N; the shift command will not be executed unless the brake is applied.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Idle

Always engage before starting engine.

If the driving situation requires, e.g. when downshifting on a slippery road surface, the Sequential Manual Transmission automatically clutches and then declutches again, i.e. it is not necessary to engage idling manually.

▷ The system shifts into N when you open the driver's door or the hood with the engine running and do not operate pedals, shift paddles or the selector lever. To begin driving after closing the driver's door or the hood, first shift the selector lever into the N position, and then shift into drive.◀

S Sequential mode

You can shift up and down using the shift paddles or the selector lever. You do not need to remove your foot from the accelerator to do so.

After every engine start, as soon as the selector lever is pushed to the right into the drive position D and the brake pedal is pressed, the Sequential mode is activated.

CarManuals2.com

Starting off is also possible on a level road surface in second gear, e.g. in case of ice.

In the following situations, the Sequential Manual Transmission thinks for you:

- Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, the system will not execute a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev.
- When the vehicle is stationary, the transmission automatically downshifts into first gear.
- Shortly before dropping below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission downshifts automatically even without your intervention.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

D Drive mode

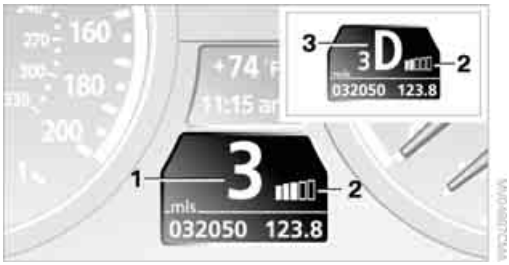
In the Drive mode, all forward gears are shifted automatically.

Shifting from Sequential mode to Drive mode: press selector lever to the right toward D/S.

To switch back into the Sequential mode: shift using the shift paddles or the selector lever or press selector lever to the right toward D/S again.

Kick-down: for rapid acceleration, e.g. passing, press the accelerator pedal as far down as it will go. You achieve maximum acceleration.

Displays in instrument cluster



1 Gear 1 to 7, R, N engaged

2 Selected driving program, matches the number of illuminated fields, refer to Drivelogic on page 63

3 In drive mode, the currently selected gear followed by a D is displayed.

▷ The gear display flashes when you open the driver's door with the engine running. If you do not subsequently operate the pedals, shift paddles, or selector lever, then the system shifts into N.◀

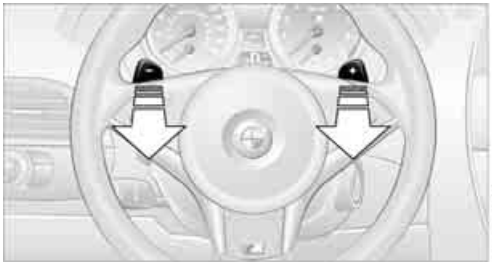
Gear changes

Using selector lever

▷ To upshift, pull the selector lever back.

▷ To downshift, push the selector lever forward.

Using shift paddles on steering wheel



▷ To upshift, briefly pull the right shift paddle +.

▷ To downshift, briefly pull the left shift paddle –.

Drivelogic

With Drivelogic various driving programs are available to you.

Each time you change between the Sequential mode and the Drive mode, the driving program last selected in the respective mode is active. Exception: after the first change from the Sequential to the Drive mode, driving program 3 is active.

In Drive mode

There are five different driving programs, ranging from relaxed 1 to sporty/highly dynamic 5.

In Sequential mode

You can choose from six driving programs from balanced/dynamic 1 to sporty/purist 6.

Each time the engine is started, driving program 3 is activated.

Program 6 is only available when the DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, refer to page 83. If DSC is activated, then the system switches from program 6 to program 5

▷ To maintain vehicle stability, always activate DSC whenever possible.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Selecting driving program with button in center console

Press the button repeatedly until the desired driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page. 63

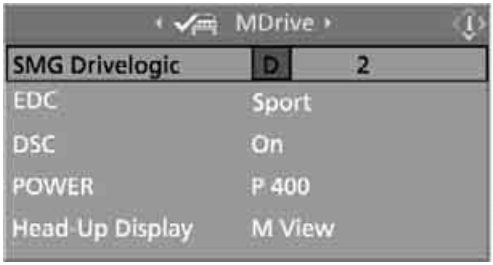
Selecting driving program via button on steering wheel

You can also activate your preferred driving program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 53.

With the ignition switched on you can change the settings of MDrive on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "MDrive" and press the controller.
4. Select "SMG Drivelogic" and press the controller. The first setting is selected.



5. Turn the controller to set Drive mode or Sequential mode.

   "Unchanged" retains the current settings made outside of MDrive.
6. Press the controller to select driving programs.
7. Turn the controller to set the driving program.
8. Press the controller.

Shift lights

To achieve the best vehicle acceleration with a sporty driving style in the Sequential mode, shift lights in the Head-Up Display* indicate the optimum shifting point briefly before reaching the maximum rpm.

1. Switch on Head-Up Display, refer to Head-Up Display on page 93.
2. Select display "M View" on Head-Up Display, refer to Selecting displays on page 93.

The current engine speed is highlighted on the tachometer.

CarManuals2.com

3. When approaching the maximum rpm, yellow illuminated fields **1** of the tachometer consecutively indicate the approaching upshift point.
4. Shift at the latest when the red indicator field **2** lights up.

When the permissible maximum rpm is reached, the entire tachometer begins to flash. When the maximum rpm is exceeded, the fuel supply is cut off to protect the engine. Always avoid engine speeds in this range.

M Engine Dynamic Control

With M Engine Dynamic Control you can influence how sporty the reaction of your vehicle to accelerator pedal movements is to be. Three programs are available for engine control.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

"P 400" program

In the "P 400" program the engine reacts gently to the movement of the accelerator pedal. This is, for example, ideal for city driving or driving on snow. In the process, the fuel consumption is minimal and the engine output is reduced.

"P 500" program

The "P 500" program provides maximum performance and more spontaneous reaction of the engine to accelerator pedal movements.

"P 500 Sport" program

In the "P 500 Sport" program the engine reacts especially spontaneously and uncompromisingly sporty with maximum performance to accelerator pedal movements.

Selecting program

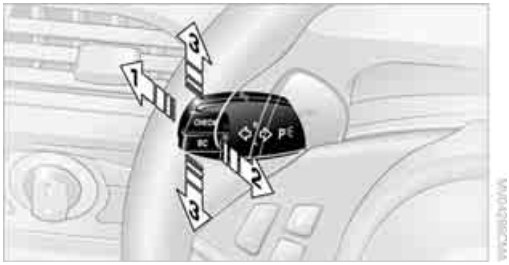
Each time the engine is started, the "P 400" program is activated.

Press the POWER button to activate the "P 500" program. Pressing the POWER button repeatedly switches between the programs "P 400" and "P 500".

You can also activate your preferred program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 53. You can only activate the "P 500 Sport" program with MDrive.

For the programs "P 500" and "P 500 Sport" the LED in the POWER button lights up.

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher



1 High beams
2 Headlamp flasher
3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Move the lever beyond the resistance point.

To switch off manually, only press the lever to the resistance point.

Atypically rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates the failure of a turn signal lamp.◀

CarManuals2.com

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there as long as you wish to signal.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point; the turn signals flash three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Triple turn signal" and press the controller.
   Triple turn signal is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system

1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating rain sensor
4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps
5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Switching on wipers

Pull the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

CarManuals2.com

Press once.
The system reverts to operation in the intermittent mode whenever the vehicle is stationary.

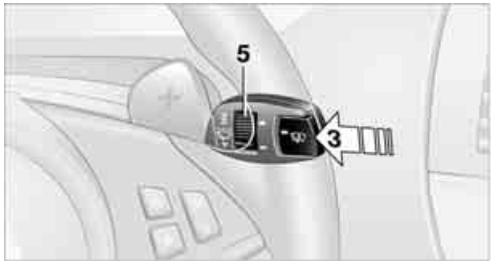
Fast wiper speed

Briefly press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system reverts to operation at normal speed whenever the vehicle is stationary.

Rain sensor

Wiper operation is controlled automatically as a function of the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Turn the knurled wheel **5**.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**. The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Cleaning windshield and headlamps

Pull the lever, arrow **4**:

The system sprays washer fluid against the windshield and activates the wipers for a brief period.

When the vehicle lighting is switched on, the headlamps are simultaneously washed at appropriate intervals.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do so, your vision could be obscured. To avoid freezing, use a washer fluid antifreeze, refer to Washer fluid. Do not use washers when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, as this will damage the washer pump.◀

Windshield washer nozzles

Both windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Washer fluid

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. For this reason, keep it away from ignition sources and store only in the closed original container out of reach of children. Otherwise, there is the danger of bodily injury. Always follow the instructions for use provided on the containers.◀

Filler neck for washer fluid

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

In order to maintain the mixture ratio, mix the washer fluid before filling.◀

Capacity

Capacity approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

Cruise control

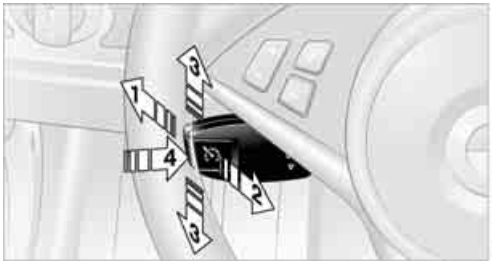
The concept

The cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h and higher. The vehicle stores and maintains the speed that you set using the lever mounted on the steering column. To maintain the specified speed, the system brakes if the engine braking effect is not sufficient on a downhill grade. Speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient.

CarManuals2.com

Do not use the cruise control under driving conditions that do not permit a constant speed, e.g. when driving on winding roads, in heavy traffic or in poor road conditions such as snow, rain, ice, and loose road surface. Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◀

One lever for all functions



1 Maintaining, storing and increasing speed
2 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating
3 Interrupting and deactivating system
4 Resuming stored speed

Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

Press lever to resistance point, arrow **1**:
The system maintains and stores the current vehicle speed. The display **1** in the speedometer, see below, indicates this regulated speed. Every time you press the lever, the vehicle's speed increases by roughly 1 mph/1 km/h.

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it:
The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system maintains and stores your current speed as soon as you release the lever.

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

Pull the lever, arrow **2**:
Functions are the same as **1**; the speed is reduced.

Interrupting system

Press the lever up or down, arrow **3**.

The display **1** in the speedometer changes color.

In addition, the system is automatically interrupted:

- ▷ when you brake, even with the handbrake
- ▷ when you depress the clutch pedal
- ▷ when you shift manually

Resuming stored speed

Press button **4**:
The vehicle accelerates to and maintains the stored speed.

Deactivating system

- ▷ Press the lever up or down twice, arrow **3**
- ▷ Switch off the ignition

The speed stored in the memory is deleted.

Displays in instrument cluster

CarManuals2.com

1 Stored speed

2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock

CarManuals2.com

1 Time, outside temperature, refer to Computer on page 70

2 Odometer and trip odometer

3 Press button:

- ▷ with ignition switched on, trip odometer is reset
- ▷ with ignition switched off, odometer is briefly displayed

Tachometer

The advance warning field, arrow **1**, and the red warning field, arrow **2**, change depending on the engine temperature. As the engine temperature rises, the permissible engine speed also increases. Avoid allowing the engine speed to rise as far as the advance warning field whenever possible.

Be sure to avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. At high revs in this range, the flow of fuel is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant and therefore the engine become too hot, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level, refer to page 213.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Engine oil temperature*

The general operating temperature lies between 175 °F /80 °C and 250 °F /120 °C. Do not exceed a value of approx. 265 °F /130 °C.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, the permissible engine speed, and with it the available engine output is reduced.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 18.5 US gal/ 70 liters. You can find information on refueling on page 200.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

After the reserve quantity has been reached, a message briefly appears on the Control Display; the cruising range is shown in the computer. Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains on the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Computer

Displays in instrument cluster

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The following information is displayed in the specified order:

- ▷ Time and outside temperature
- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ Oil level, refer to Checking engine oil level on page 210

Manual transmission:
The range, average consumption and fuel level are shown in the lower display in place of the gear indicator.

CarManuals2.com

It is possible to change between the time and date display by pressing the CHECK button.◀

Time

To set the time, refer to page 77.

Outside temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. There is an increased danger of ice.

Ice can form even at temperatures above +37 °F /+3 °C. Drive carefully, especially on bridges and shaded roadways; otherwise, your risk of accident increases.◀

You can set the unit of measure °F or °C on the Control Display, refer to Units of measure on page 79.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is projected based on the driving style over the last 20 miles/ 30 km.

⚠ Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

To reset the average fuel consumption: press the BC button in the turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

For different routes

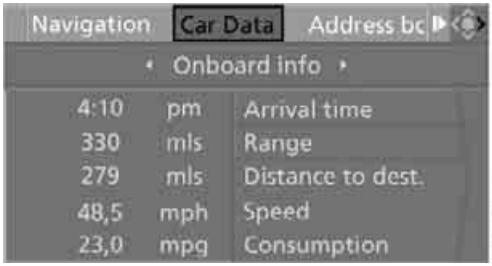
You can display the average speed for two different routes on the Control Display, refer to the following and to Trip computer.

Displays on Control Display

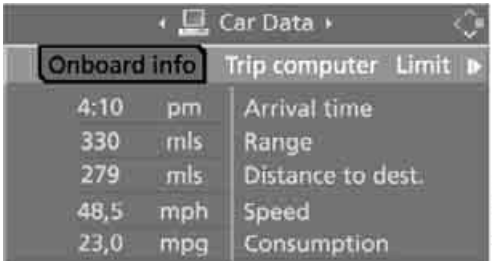
You can also call up the computer via iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

CarManuals2.com

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*: open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.



4. Select "Onboard info" and press the controller.



- ▷ Estimated time of arrival at destination and remaining distance:
  - ▷ Entering a distance manually in the computer, see below.
  - ▷ Entering a destination in the navigation system*, refer to page 124.
- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

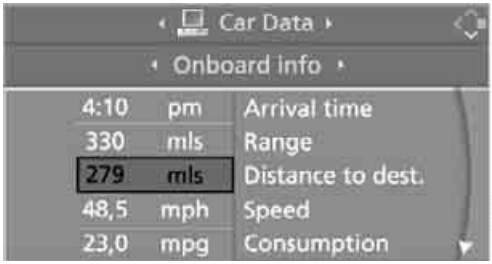
Resetting values

You can reset the values for average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the desired menu item and press the controller.
2. Press the controller again to confirm.

Entering a distance manually

1. Select "Distance to dest." and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

2. Turn the controller to select the distance to your destination. If necessary, hold it against a slight resistance to enter a greater difference.
3. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The distance is automatically predetermined during the destination guidance of the navigation system*.

Trip computer

The trip computer is suitable for a vacation trip, for example.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*: open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Trip computer" and press the controller.

▷ Departure time
▷ Driving time
▷ Distance traveled
▷ Average speed
▷ Average fuel consumption

Switching trip computer on/off and resetting all values:

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item and press the controller.

Display options

You can display the computer or the trip computer in the assistance window.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item:
   ▷ "Onboard info"
   ▷ "Trip computer".
3. Press the controller.

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date for the next maintenance are displayed briefly with the ignition switched on.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The first oil change displayed at approx. 1,200 miles/2,000 km signals that the break-in check is due.

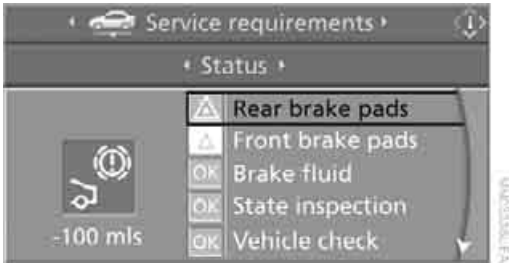
Your BMW Service Advisor can determine your vehicle's current service requirements by reading out the data stored in the remote control.◀

Additional information

You can view more detailed information by using the Control Display, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.

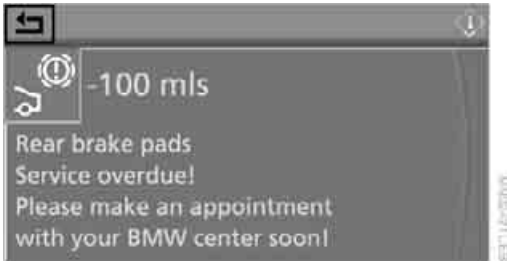
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.



The display shows a list of selected service and maintenance procedures, as well as legally mandated official inspections.

You can request more detailed information on every entry.

Select the entry and press the controller.



To exit from the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Symbols

OK No service is currently required.

The deadline for service or an official inspection is approaching. Please arrange a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

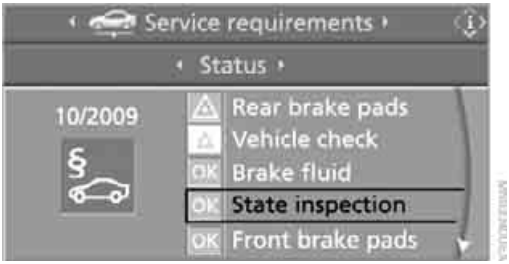
Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is set correctly, refer to page 79; otherwise, the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

7. Select "State inspection" and press the controller.



8. Select "Set service date" and press the controller. The month is selected.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.

10. Press the controller to apply the setting. The year is selected.
11. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
12. Press the controller to apply the setting. The date entry is stored.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors functions in the vehicle and issues a message if there is a malfunction in the monitored systems. A Check Control message of this kind includes indicator or warning lamps in the instrument cluster, possibly an acoustic signal, and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps

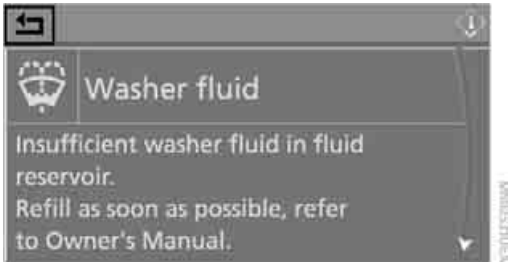
The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

⚠ This symbol means that a Check Control message has been generated. The symbol remains visible even if the Check Control message has been hidden after a short time. The combinations of warning lamps and text messages are stored and can be viewed later, also refer to page 75.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

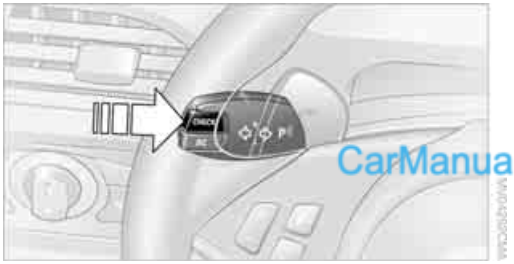


You can display supplementary information regarding most Check Control messages, e.g. as to the cause of a malfunction and corresponding actions to be taken, see below.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp lights up.

To exit the displayed information:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

Hiding Check Control messages



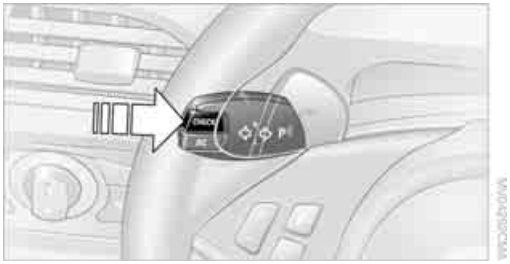
Press the CHECK button in the turn signal lever.

Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If a number of these malfunctions occur simultaneously, they are displayed in succession.

Other messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but remain stored.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Press the button longer:
   The first stored message is displayed.



2. Press the button:
   A new message appears each time you press the button.

Displaying supplementary information

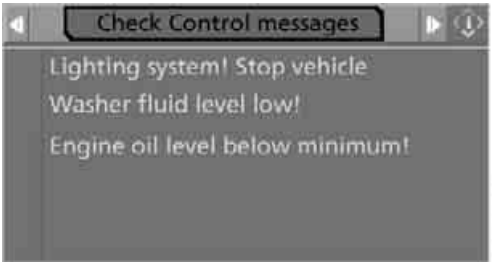
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Info sources" is selected and press the controller.

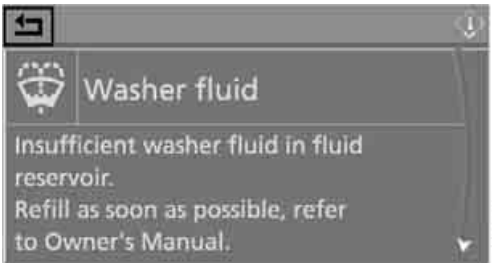
4. Turn the controller until "Service" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Check Control messages" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

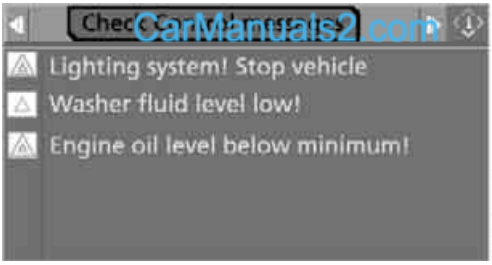


6. Select a message and press the controller.



To exit from the menu immediately:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Displaying the urgency of malfunctions



CarManuals2.com

Depending on the equipment, the stored Check Control messages are also displayed with the following symbols:

OK No malfunctions detected in the monitored systems.

Malfunctions detected in the monitored systems. Depending on the malfunction, supplementary information is shown on the Control Display.

The symbols also indicate the status of the service requirements display, refer to page 72.

Displays after completion of trip

Malfunction reports generated during the trip are shown consecutively when you switch off the ignition.

Before the display disappears, you can display the messages once again. Press the CHECK button for approx. 2 seconds. If several messages are present, you can press the CHECK button repeatedly.

The display:

- ▷ turns off automatically after a brief period
- ▷ can be turned off at any time by pressing the CHECK button again for approx. 2 seconds

Speed limit

You can enter a speed and a Check Control message indicates when you have reached this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*: open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Limit" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Select the speed value and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the limit. If necessary, hold it against a slight resistance to enter a greater difference.
7. Press the controller to apply the setting. The limit is automatically switched on.

Applying your current speed as limit

Select "Select current speed" and press the controller. The system applies your current speed as the limit.

Activating limit

Select "On" and press the controller.
The limit is automatically switched on.

Stopwatch

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*: open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Stopwatch" and press the controller.

Starting, stopping, or resetting

▷ Select "Start" and press the controller.
The stopwatch starts at the displayed time.

▷ Select "Reset" and press the controller.
The stopwatch is reset and it restarts if it was running beforehand.

▷ Select "Stop" and press the controller.
This stops the timer.

Taking an intermediate time reading

Select "Interim time" and press the controller. The interim time appears below the ongoing primary stopwatch count.

▷ All of the other functions remain available even while the stopwatch is running. The stopwatch continues to operate in the background.◀

Settings on Control Display

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button once or twice until the start menu appears.

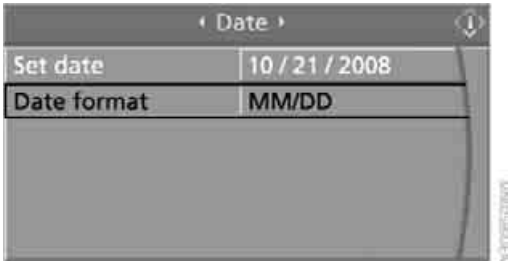
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

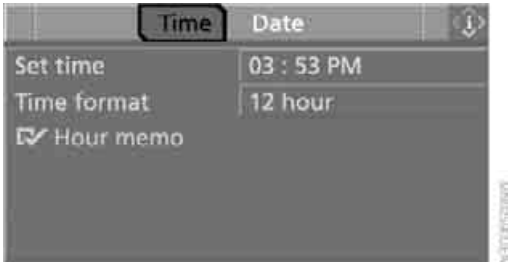
Setting time

1. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.

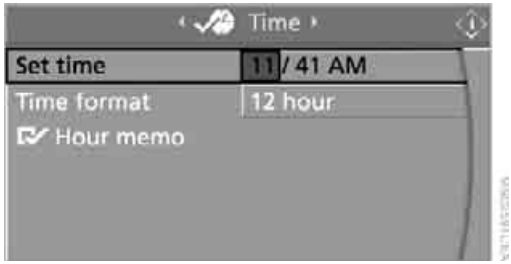
2. Move the controller once to the front if necessary to change to the first field from the top.



3. Turn the controller until "Time" is selected and press the controller.



4. Turn the controller until "Set time" is selected and press the controller.



Making settings

1. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
2. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

The changed time is stored.

Activating hour signal*

You will hear three tones just before the top of each hour.

Select "Hour memo" and press the controller.
The hour signal is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting 12h/24h format

1. Select "Time format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Setting date

1. Select "Date" and press the controller.

2. Select "Set date" and press the controller. The first section of the date display is selected, in this case the month.
3. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
4. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next adjustment is selected.
5. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the date is stored.

Setting date format

1. Select "Date format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the base setting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

6. If necessary, move the controller to the right to select "Display".
7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

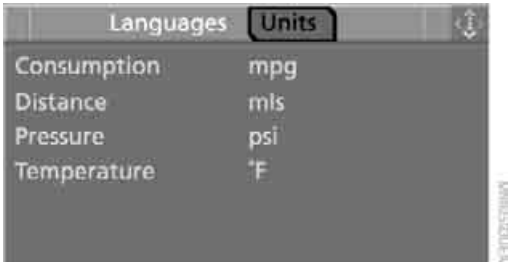
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Units of measure

You can change the units of measure for fuel consumption, distances, temperature and pressure.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Units" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select the menu item to be set.
7. Press the controller.
8. Select the desired unit of measure and press the controller.

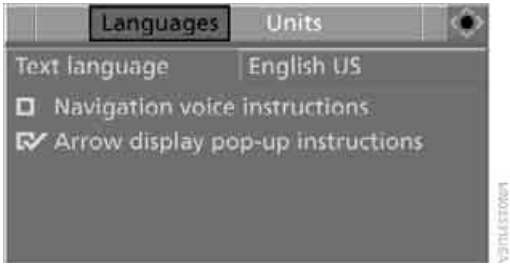
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Language on Control Display

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Text language" and press the controller. You can select a different language for the text displays.
7. Select the desired language and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Technology for comfort, convenience and safety

PDC Park Distance Control*

CarManuals2.com

The concept

The PDC assists you when you are parking. Acoustic signals and an optical display* alert you to the approach of an object from behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper. The range of these sensors is approx. 7 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning first sounds for the sensors at the front and at the two rear corners at approx. 24 in/60 cm, and for the center rear sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

⚠ PDC is a parking aid that can indicate the presence of objects when they are being approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed; otherwise, the physical circumstances could cause the system warning to be activated too late.◀

Switching on automatically

The system starts to operate approx. one second after you shift into reverse or move the selector lever into position R with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Wait this short time before driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button; the LED lights up.

Switching off manually

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Automatic deactivation

After driving approx. 165 ft/50 m or at over approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system is switched off and the LED goes out. You can reactivate the system manually as needed.

Signal tones

An intermittent signal indicates the distance of the vehicle from an object being approached. Thus, an object detected to the left rear of the vehicle will be indicated by a signal tone from the left rear speaker, etc. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that was only detected by one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you drive parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

As a preventive measure, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaners for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm to them.

Exhaust gases near the rear sensors can cause a signal tone to sound.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

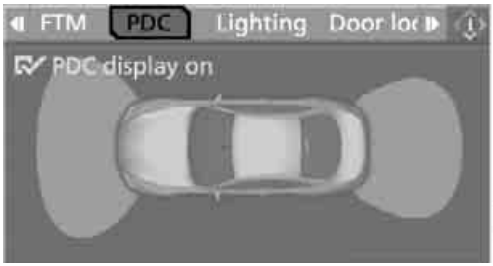
PDC with visual warning*

You can also enjoy the option of having the system show the approach to an object on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already shown there before a signal tone sounds. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "Vehicle / Tires" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "PDC" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "PDC display on" and press the controller.
   The PDC screen is activated.

The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limits

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstacles always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are involved, there is a blind spot in which objects cannot be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with tow bars and trailer couplings, or thin and wedge-shaped objects etc. Low objects already displayed, e.g. curbs, can also disappear from the detection area of the sensors again before or after a continuous tone already sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. For this reason, drive with care; otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury or property damage.
Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC signal tone.◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW is equipped with an extended array of systems designed to enhance and maintain vehicle stability under extreme conditions.

ABS Antilock Brake System

ABS prevents the wheels from locking during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during hard braking. This increases active driving safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine. For information on safe braking, refer to page 117.

CBC Cornering Brake Control

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering response when braking while cornering or when braking during a lane change.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Electronic brake-force distribution

This system controls the brake system's application pressure at the rear wheels to ensure stable deceleration.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC optimizes the vehicle stability and traction. It also detects unstable driving states such as understeering and oversteering, and helps keep the vehicle on course within the physical limits by reducing the engine output and by braking at the wheels.

The DSC is operational every time you start the engine.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Do not reduce the additional safety margin of the system by taking risks.◀

CarManuals2.com

Indicator lamp

The indicator lamp goes out shortly after the engine is started.
The indicator lamp flashes: DSC is controlling the drive forces and brake forces.
The indicator lamp lights up continuously: DSC is deactivated.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

The M Dynamic Mode is a mode of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control. It enables driving with greater longitudinal and lateral acceleration on dry road surfaces, however with limited vehicle stability. The system does not provide stabilizing intervention by reducing the engine output and braking at the wheels until the absolute driving limit is reached. Steering corrections by the driver may also be required in this driving state.

The M Dynamic Mode is deactivated each time the engine is started.

With the M Dynamic Mode activated, stabilizing interventions are only carried out to a reduced degree.◀

To maintain vehicle stability, drive with DSC activated and the M Dynamic Mode deactivated whenever possible.◀

Indicator lamp

MDM

The indicator lamp goes out shortly after the engine is started. The indicator lamp lights up continuously:
M Dynamic Mode is activated.
The indicator lamp lights up continuously and the DSC indicator lamp flashes: the M Dynamic Mode is active and controls the drive and braking forces.

Activating MDM

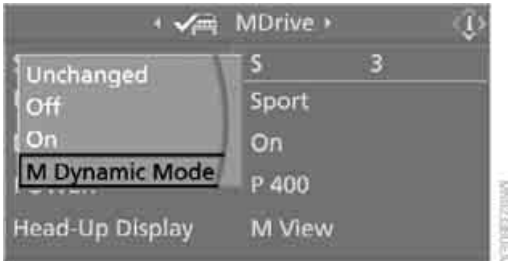
You activate the M Dynamic Mode with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 53.

With the ignition switched on you can change the settings of MDrive on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "MDrive" and press the controller.
4. Select "DSC" and press the controller.

5. Select "M Dynamic Mode" and press the controller.



You can also activate and deactivate the M Dynamic Mode with the MDM button.

Reactivating MDM

Press the button on the steering wheel or the MDM button* again; the MDM indicator lamp goes out.

Activating DSC*

▷ To maintain vehicle stability, drive with the system activated whenever possible.◀

When rocking free or starting off from deep snow or on loose road surfaces, it can be useful to briefly deactivate DSC.

Press the DSC OFF button; the DSC indicator lamp lights up continuously. DSC and MDM are deactivated.

A message appears on the Control Display. Please note any supplementary information that appears there.

Manual transmission*:

Press and hold the MDM button.

Under unfavorable traction conditions, the engine output may be briefly reduced even when DSC is deactivated.

Reactivating DSC

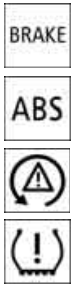
Press the DSC OFF button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

You can also activate and deactivate DSC with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 53.

Manual transmission*:

Press the MDM button.

Malfunction in driving stability control systems



The warning lamp for the brake system lights up, together with the indicator lamps for ABS, DSC and Tire Pressure Monitor or Flat Tire Monitor. A message appears on the Control Display. The driving stability control systems have failed. Conventional braking efficiency remains available without limitations. While you may continue, you should remember to proceed cautiously and drive defensively while avoiding full brake applications. The Tire Pressure Monitor or the Flat Tire Monitor is also malfunctioning. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Display of the previously described malfunction on Canadian models.

The DSC warning lamp lights up. A malfunction has occurred in DSC including MDM. The stability maintenance functions are no longer available. The vehicle remains operational. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

The brake system warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. The brake assistant is defective. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction on Canadian models.

EDC Electronic Damping Control

The concept

If the influencing variables such as road surface quality or operating conditions such as steering, braking etc. change, the damping automatically adjusts to the new conditions within a fraction of a second.

You can choose from three programs.

"Comfort" program

Select the "Comfort" program if you want comfort-oriented coordination of shock absorbers and steering.

"Normal" program

The "Normal" program offers a balanced mixture of the comfort and the sport program.

"Sport" program

Select the "Sport" program if you want a consistently sporty coordination of shock absorbers and steering.

Selecting program

CarManuals2.com

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic:

Manual transmission:

Press the EDC button repeatedly:

- ▷ "Comfort": LED off.
- ▷ "Normal": one LED lights up.
- ▷ "Sport": both LEDs light up.

The last selected program is active each time the engine is started.

You can also activate your preferred program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 53.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor detects a pressure loss in one tire by comparing the speeds of the individual wheels during driving.

In the event of a pressure loss, there is a change in the rolling circumference and therefore the rotation speed of the corresponding wheel. The system detects this change and reports it as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

To ensure the reliable signaling of a flat tire, the system must be initialized at the correct tire inflation pressure.

▷ The initialization must be repeated after every correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

The Flat Tire Monitor cannot indicate sudden severe tire damage caused by outside factors and does not detect a natural, even pressure drop in all four tires.

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snow-covered or slippery roads
- ▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Driving with snow chains*

Initializing system

▷ The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is automatically continued.
Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains*.◀

With Sequential Manual Transmission via the button in the center console:

1. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
2. Press the button for approx. 5 seconds. After the button is released, the warning lamp lights up in yellow for several seconds in the instrument cluster, refer to Indication of a flat tire. The message "Initializing FTM ..." appears on the Control Display for a few seconds.

3. Start to drive.
   The initialization finishes during driving without feedback.

Via iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16:

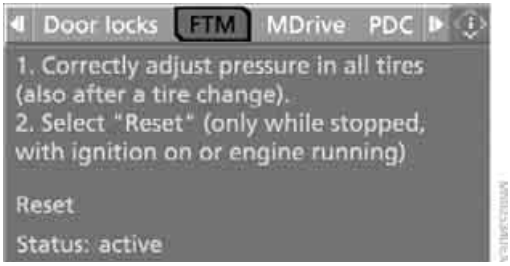
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FTM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

The message "resetting FTM ..." is displayed for a few seconds. The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up yellow for a few seconds.

9. Start to drive.
The initialization finishes during driving without feedback.

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamp lights up in red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Identify damaged tire. To do this, check the tire inflation pressure using the M Mobility System, refer to Producing tire inflation pressure on page 219.
3. Repair flat tire with M Mobility System, refer to page 218, or replace the damaged wheel, refer to Changing wheels on page 220.

TPM Tire Pressure Monitor*

The concept

TPM checks the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system reports when the tire inflation pressure has dropped considerably in one or several tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise fault-free operation of the system is not ensured.

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

TPM cannot announce sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences.◀

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g. a flat tire is reported despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot display a flat tire if a wheel has been mounted without TPM electronics, or if TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Status display on Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes the fact that the tire pressure changes during driving into account. A correction is only required if requested by TPM with the color.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Green

The tire pressure matches the learned set state.

"TPM active" is displayed on the Control Display.

One wheel is yellow

CarManuals2.com

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire.

Reasons for this can be:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary interference due to systems or devices which use the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

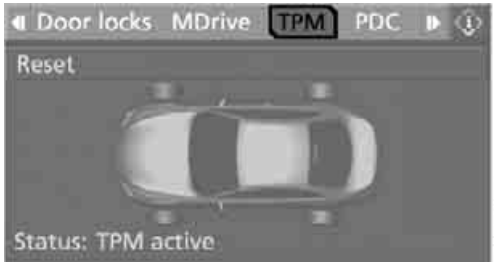
Resetting system

▷ Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

Resetting finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "TPM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

9. Start to drive.
   The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After a few minutes of driving, the set tire inflation pressures in the tires are applied as the set values to be monitored. Resetting finishes during driving. The tires are shown in green on the Control Display.

▷ If a flat tire is detected during resetting and applying the tire inflation pressures, all tires are shown in yellow on the Control Display. The message "Tire low!" is displayed.◀

Message with low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. If all four wheels are shown in yellow, identify the damaged tire on the vehicle.
3. Repairing flat tire with M Mobility System, refer to page 218, or replace the damaged wheel or wheels, refer to Changing wheels* on page 220.

The spare tire* is equipped with the necessary TPC electronics and is also monitored after mounting and after resetting the system.

Have the tire replaced by a BMW center or a workshop informed on handling TPM which works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and a message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

A message like this is displayed in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a malfunction; have the system checked.
- ▷ If a wheels is mounted without TPM electronics.
- ▷ If TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire, including the spare*, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure indicator when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure indicator illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure indicator.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure indicator. When the system detects a malfunction, the indicator will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction indicator after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

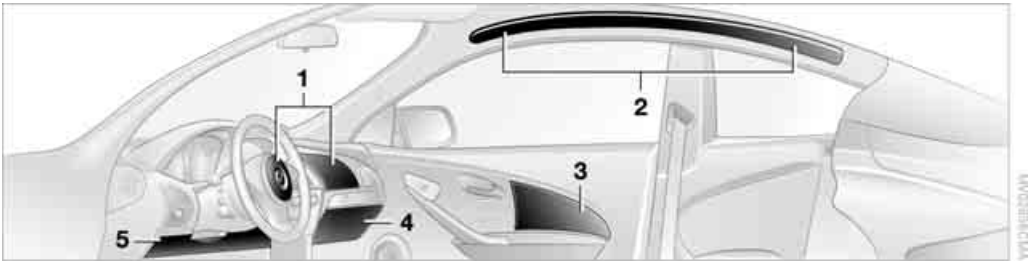
CarManuals2.com

Brake force display

▷ On the left: normal braking.

▷ On the right: heavy braking.

Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Coupe: Head airbags

3 Side airbags

4 Knee airbag

5 Knee airbag

Protective action

⚠ To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please follow the adjustment instructions on page 45.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of a side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area.

The head airbag supports the head. The knee airbag protects the legs from colliding with the cockpit.

The airbags are deliberately not triggered in every impact situation, e.g. less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

⚠ Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attempt to remove the airbag restraint system from the vehicle. Do not modify or tamper with either the wiring or the individual components in the airbag system. This category includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, the side trim panels on the doors and on the Coupe, the roof pillars along with the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel. Do not touch the individual components directly after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

In the event of malfunctions, deactivation, or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators carried out only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel and has the required explosives licenses. Otherwise unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag triggering, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warnings and information on the airbags is also provided on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags

The occupation of the seat is detected by evaluating the impression on the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat. The system correspondingly activates or deactivates the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side.

▷ The current status of the front passenger airbags, i.e. deactivated or activated, is indicated by the indicator lamp over the interior rearview mirror, refer to Operating state of front passenger airbags below.◀

⚠ Before transporting a child in the front passenger seat, read the safety information and follow the instructions under Transporting children safely, refer to page 56.

The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated for teenagers and adults in certain sitting positions; the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up when this occurs. In these cases, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired status cannot be produced by changing the sitting position, transport the corresponding person in the rear seat.

Do not fit seat covers, seat cushion padding, beaded mats or other items onto the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not place objects under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise, a correct evaluation of the occupied seat surface cannot be ensured.◀

Operating state of front passenger airbags

The illustration here shows a possible arrangement in the Coupe. With some vehicle equipment packages or in the Convertible, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating status of the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side depending on whether the seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a child restraint system intended for the purpose is properly detected on the seat. The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

▷ Most child seats are detected by the system. Especially the child seats required by the NHTSA at the time the vehicle is manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.◀

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient height is detected on the seat. The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when the seat is empty.

CarManuals2.com

But the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are still deactivated.

Operational readiness of airbag system

From radio readiness, refer to page 59, the warning lamp lights up briefly, indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the safety belt tensioners.

Airbag system malfunction

▷ Warning lamp does not light up as of radio readiness.

▷ Warning lamp lights up continuously.

⚠ Have the airbag system checked immediately in case of a malfunction; otherwise, there is a danger that the airbag system may not respond in the expected manner in an accident despite an impact of corresponding intensity.◀

CarManuals2.com

Convertible: rollover protection system

The rollover protection system is automatically activated in the event of an accident or a critical driving situation, extreme inclination on the longitudinal axis, or loss of ground contact. The rollover bars located behind the rear head restraints are deployed within fractions of a second.

As a supplement to the rollover bar integrated into the windshield frame, the rollover protection system ensures that all vehicle occupants have the necessary headroom.

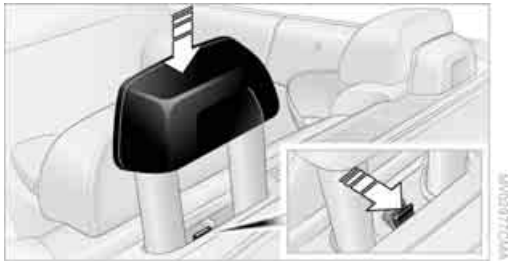
⚠ Always keep the path of movement of the rollover protection system clear.

In less severe accidents, you are protected by the fastened safety belt and, depending on the severity of the accident, the belt tensioner and the multistage airbag restraint system.◀

Lowering

If the rollover protection system experienced no impact after automatic activation, then it can be lowered again. No tools are necessary for this purpose.

1. Press the release backward and hold in that position.



2. Press the rollover protection unit halfway down from above.
3. Let go of the release.
4. Press the rollover protection unit down until it snaps into place.

5. Use the same procedure for the second rollover protection unit.

Have the rollover protection system checked after unexpected triggering.

⚠ Never move the convertible top when the rollover protection system is raised.

No changes of any nature may be made to the individual components of the rollover protection system and wiring.

Work on the rollover protection system may only be performed at a BMW center.

Unprofessional attempts to service the system

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

can lead to failure or malfunction.
For a system check and to ensure long-term functioning, you must comply with the maintenance intervals of the service requirements, refer to page 72.◀

Head-Up Display*

The concept

With the Head-Up Display, important information is projected into the driver's field of view, e.g. navigation instructions. This enables you to absorb this information without looking away from the road.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

Selecting displays

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
7. Select desired information of Head-Up Display.

8. Press the controller.
   The information is shown on the Head-Up Display.
   "M View": the M view appears in the Head-Up Display.
   Information unavailable in the M view appears on the Control Display in gray and cannot be selected.
   "M View": the default view is displayed.

The M view for the Head-Up Display can also be selected with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 53.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Default view

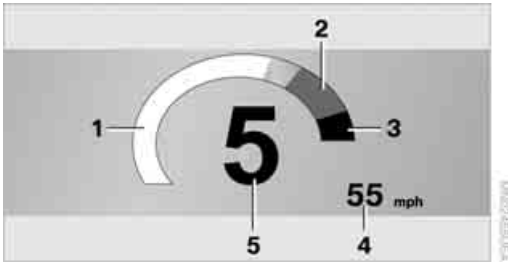
1 Navigation instructions

2 Stored desired speed of cruise control

3 Speed

CarManuals2.com

"M view"



1 Current engine speed, highlighted
2 Advance warning field of tachometer
3 Red warning field of tachometer, also refer to Tachometer on page 69
4 Speed
5 Gear display

For information on the shift lights in the tachometer, refer to page 64.

Setting brightness

The brightness of the display is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the base setting. With the low beams switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted with the knurled wheel of the instrument lighting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

The visibility of the displays in the Head-Up Display is influenced by:

- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters
- Certain sitting positions
- Objects on the cover of the Head-Up Display
- Wet road surface and unfavorable lighting conditions

If the image is distorted, please have the base setting checked at a BMW center.

Specialized windshield

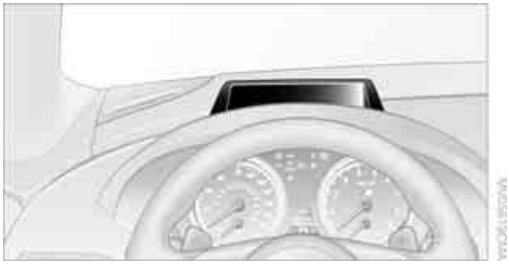
The windshield is a part of the system. The shape of the windshield complies with the requirements of the Head-Up Display to enable a precise display. A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed. Windshield replacement should be carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Care instructions

You can find everything you need to know on this topic by consulting the Caring for your vehicle brochure.



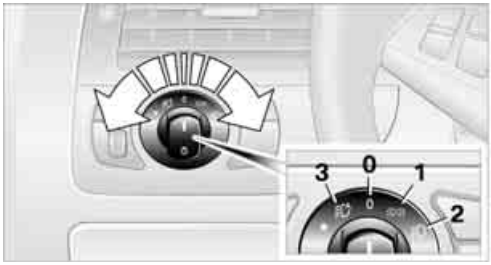
Only clean the cover of the Head-Up Display with a soft, nonabrasive cloth or with a display cleaning cloth; otherwise, you may damage it.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lights off and daytime running lamps*

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps*

2 Low beams and welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control, daytime running lamps*, welcome lamps, Adaptive Head Light* and high-beam assistant*

If you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off when the light switch is in position **2** or **3**.

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

▷ The parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the roadside parking lamps on one side, refer to page 98.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control

In switch position **3**, the system activates the low beams and switches them on or off in response to changes in ambient light conditions, for instance, in a tunnel, at dawn and dusk and in case of precipitation. Adaptive Head Light* is active. The LED next to the symbol is illuminated when the low beams are on.

You can activate the daytime running lamps, refer to page 97. In the situations named above, the system then automatically switches over to the low beams.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

⚠ The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the sensors cannot detect fog of hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low beams manually under these conditions.◀

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when parking the vehicle, then when you unlock the vehicle, the parking lamps and interior lighting remain illuminated for a brief time.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Welcome light" and press the controller.

   The welcome lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

When you activate the headlamp flasher after parking the vehicle and switching off the lamps, the low beams will come on for a brief period. You can set the duration or deactivate the function via iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Pathway lighting" and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to select the desired duration.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps*

The daytime running lamps light up in position **0**, **1** and **3**. If the light switch remains in position **1**, the parking lamps light up after the ignition is switched off.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lamps*

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Daytime running lamps" and press the controller.

   The daytime running lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Adaptive Head Light*

The concept

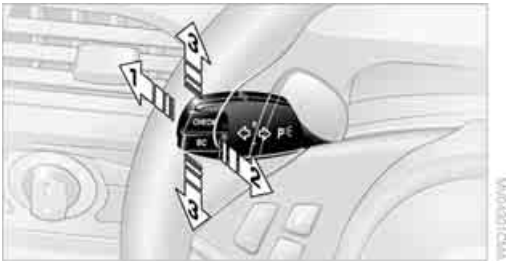
Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Activating Adaptive Head Light

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch into position **3**, refer to page 96.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Head Light is not active when driving in reverse and points toward the passenger side when the vehicle is stopped.

High beams/ roadside parking lamps



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

You also enjoy the option of lighting up just one side of your vehicle when parking:

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the resistance point, arrow **3**.

▷ The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Briefly press the lever in the opposite direction up to the resistance point, arrow **3**.

High-beam assistant*

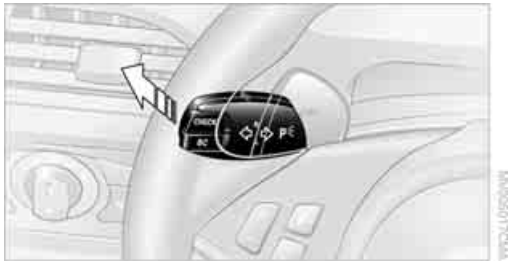
CarManuals2.com

The concept

This system automatically switches the high beams on and off. A sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror controls the process. The assistant makes sure that the high beams are switched on whenever traffic conditions permit. This relieves you of the burden of constantly switching back and forth and simultaneously provides you with the best possible visibility. Naturally, you can intervene at any time to switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating system

1. Turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 96.
2. With the low beams switched on, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the high-beam assistant is activated. The system automatically switches between high beams and low beams, reacting to oncoming traffic, vehicles ahead of you, and sufficiently lit areas, e.g. in built-up zones.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Manually switching between high beams and low beams

If you wish or the situation requires, you can intervene at any time.

- If the high-beam assistant has switched on the high beams, but you wish to use the low beams, just switch on the low beams with the turn signal lever. This deactivates the high-beam assistant.
  In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.
- If the high-beam assistant has switched on the low beams, but you wish to use the high beams, simply switch on the high beams as usual. This deactivates the system and it is up to you to switch back to low beams.
  In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.
- When the low beams are on, use the head-lamp flasher as usual.

System limits

CarManuals2.com

The high-beam assistant is designed to maximize the amount of time that high beams can be safely used and to quickly switch back to low beams when traffic approaches. The system cannot completely replace driver intervention when unusual conditions are encountered. For this reason, switch to low beams when circumstances so dictate. Failure to do so can pose a safety risk.◀

Below are a few examples of situations in which the system may not react or may only function to a limited degree, requiring personal intervention:

- in extremely unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation
- in sensing road users with poor inherent illumination such as pedestrians, cyclists, equestrians, horsedrawn vehicles, railroad or shipping traffic close to the road, and at deer crossings
- in tight curves, on steep crests or dips, with cross-traffic, or with partially hidden oncoming traffic on divided highways
- in poorly illuminated areas and in the presence of highly reflective signs
- in the low speed range
- when the windshield is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, decals etc. in the area of the inside rearview mirror
- when the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror with a cloth slightly moistened with glass cleaner

Moreover, no system can operate without limitations. High-beam assistant operation is subject to conditions that may reduce the system's ability to recognize the difference between actual vehicle head lamps or tail lamps and, for example, highly reflective signs, markers, and streetlights. To be on the safe side, the system may periodically interpret these situations as conditions that require low beams. Below are some of the situations in which premature switching to low beams can occur:

- approaching large and/or highly reflective signs
- approaching certain lights, such as driveway lighting and porch lights
- approaching certain traffic signals
- approaching large reflective markers

In these situations, the system may interpret the above conditions as a vehicle ahead requiring a switch to low beams. When the conditions return to normal, the system will reactivate the high beams.

The high-beam assistant cannot replace the driver's responsibility for complying with state laws on high-beam switching or for adapting to visibility and traffic conditions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Switching off via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "High-beam assistant" and press the controller.

   ◘ High-beam assistant is switched off.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Instrument lighting

The lighting intensity can be adjusted with the knurled wheel with the parking lamps/low beams switched on.

Interior lamps

Control of the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting, courtesy lamps and sill panel lighting is automatic.

With the courtesy lamps, LED lights are located in the door handles to illuminate the exterior area before the doors.

▷ To protect the battery, all lamps in the vehicle are switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 59.◀

Switching interior lamps on and off manually

Press button **1**.

If the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting, courtesy lamps and sill panel lighting are to remain switched off continually, press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Reading lamps

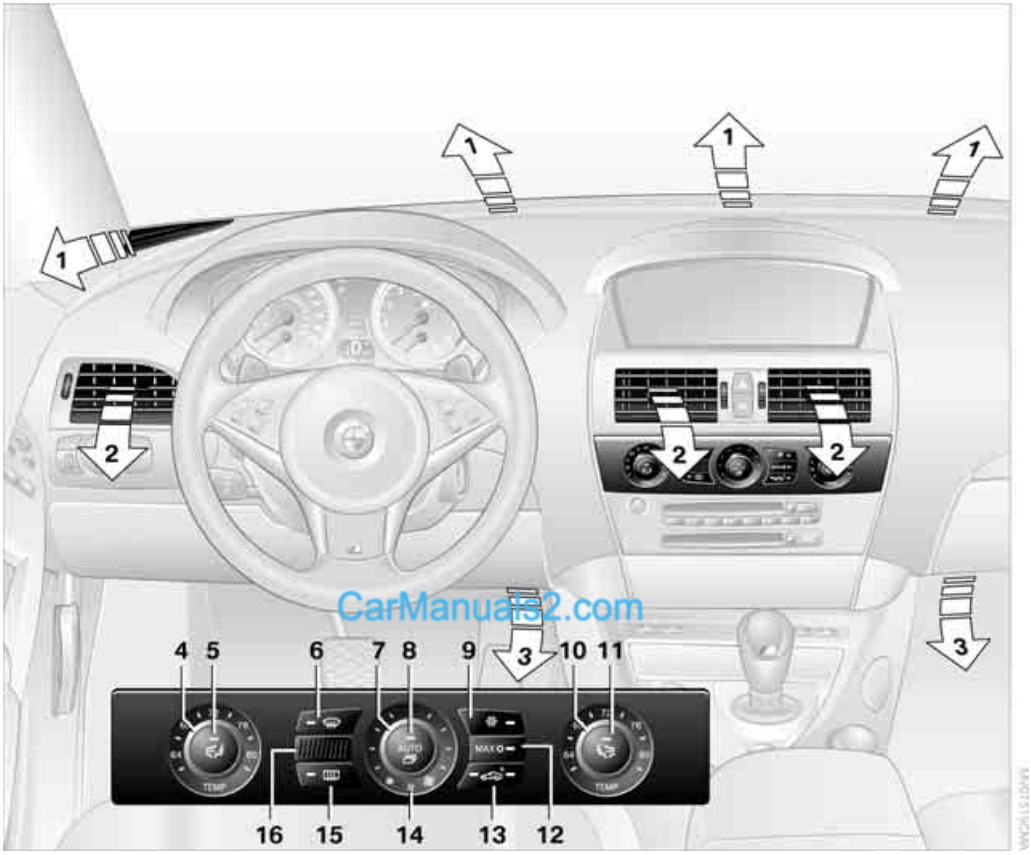
The reading lamps are beside the interior lamp: You can turn them on and off using buttons **2** located next to the lamps.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Climate

Automatic climate control



CarManuals2.com

1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body area, refer to Ventilation on page 105

3 Air to footwell

4 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment

5 Manual air distribution, driver's side

6 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

7 Manual air volume, switching off automatic climate control, residual heat utilization

8 AUTO program

9 Switching cooling function on and off manually

10 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment

11 Manual air distribution, front passenger side

12 Maximum cooling

13 AUC automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated air mode

14 LED for residual heat utilization and parked-car ventilation system

15 Rear window defroster

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

16 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

The current setting for air distribution is displayed on the Control Display.

A congenial climate

The AUTO program offers the optimum air distribution and air volume for virtually all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. Now you only need to select an interior temperature that you find pleasant.

The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, also refer to Personal Profile settings on page 29.

AUTO program

The AUTO program handles the adjustment of air volume and air distribution to the windshield and side windows, in the direction of the upper body and in the footwell. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

The cooling is switched on automatically with the AUTO program. At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program in such a way that window condensation is prevented as much as possible.

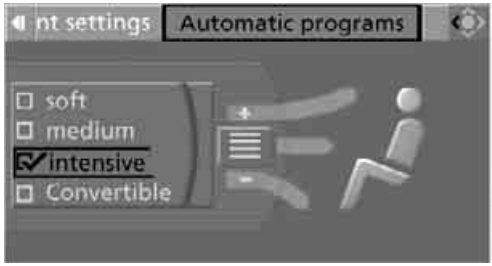
Intensity of AUTO program

You can adjust the intensity of the AUTO program by repeatedly pressing the AUTO button. The respective current setting is briefly displayed on the Control Display when the button is pressed.

You can also adjust the intensity of the AUTO program via iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Automatic programs" and press the controller.



4. Select the desired intensity and press the controller.

   ☑ The marked intensity of the automatic program is switched on.

Convertible program*

When the convertible top is opened, the convertible program can also be selected. In the convertible program, the automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the convertible top open. In addition, the air volume is increased as the speed increases.

If the convertible program has been selected, it is automatically active every time the top is opened.

CarManuals2.com

▷ The effect of the convertible program can be greatly enhanced if the wind deflector is installed.◀

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually on the driver's and front passenger side.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

▷ When switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to achieve the set temperature.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

In the highest setting you activate the maximum heating output, regardless of the outside temperature.

Adapting temperature in upper body region

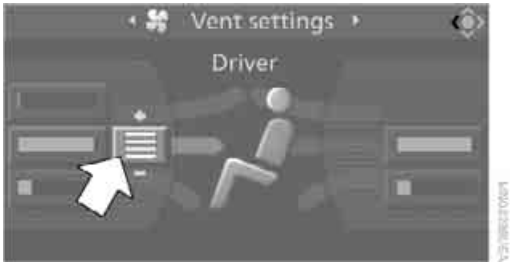
CarManuals2.com

1. Press the button to display the current setting on the Control Display.
2. Select the field by moving the controller and adjust the temperature by turning the controller.

You can also adjust the temperature in the upper body region with iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
4. Select the field by moving the controller and adjust the temperature by turning the controller.



Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly remove ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

To do this, also switch on the cooling function.

Rear window defroster

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain amount of time.

Convertible: the rear window defroster is only activated when the rear window is closed. Depending on the vehicle equipment, upper wires are used as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

Air volume, manual

You can adjust the air volume by turning. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

The air quantity is reduced and if need be, the ventilation is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The display stays the same.

Air distribution, manual

You can route the air flowing out into the vehicle interior via various programs, separately for the driver's and passenger's side:

- ▷ Upper body region
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell
- ▷ Footwell
- ▷ Driver's side: windows and footwell
- ▷ Individual program

Selecting program

Press the button repeatedly until the desired air distribution of the respective program is shown on the Control Display.

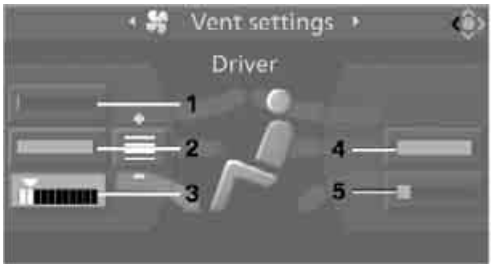
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Adjusting air distribution individually – individual program

Your settings are stored in this program.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
   The driver's and front passenger side can be adjusted separately with the fields on the right or left side.
4. Select the driver's or front passenger side if necessary.
   Move the controller to the right or left repeatedly until the driver's side or front passenger side is selected.
5. Select the desired field by moving the controller.
6. Turn the controller to adjust the air distribution.



Driver's side:

1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body

3 Air to footwell

Front passenger side:

4 Air for the upper body

5 Air to footwell

▷ Pressing the AUTO button cancels the manual air distribution settings.◀

The automatic mode for the air volume remains effective with manual air distribution.

Switching cooling function on and off

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before reheating it as needed according to the temperature setting. This function is only available when the engine is running.

The cooling function helps to avoid condensation on the window surfaces or to quickly remove them.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Maximum cooling

Maximally cooled air is obtained as quickly as possible at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F / 0 °C and with the engine running.

At the lowest temperature, the automatic climate control switches into recirculating air mode. The maximum air volume flows out of the vents for the upper body. It is therefore necessary for these vents to be open for maximum cooling.

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle. In AUC mode, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

Press the button repeatedly to run through the following control sequence:

▷ LED off: outside air flows into the vehicle continuously.

▷ Right LED on, AUC mode: the system detects pollutants in the outside air and responds by blocking the supply of outside air when required.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ Left LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is shut off continuously.

⚠ Should the windows fog up in the recirculated-air mode, press the AUTO button or switch off the recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume if necessary.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over a longer period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates continuously.◀

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

1. Switch off the engine.
2. Turn to the right, refer to arrow.

The function can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

▷ up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine

▷ engine at operating temperature

▷ sufficient battery voltage

▷ at an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

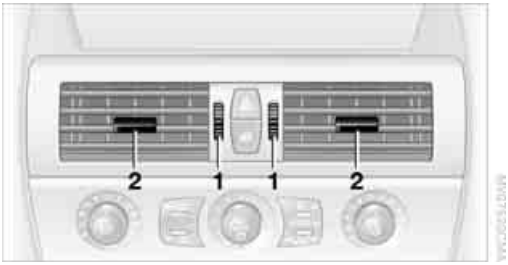
With the ignition lock at radio readiness or higher the interior temperature, the air volume and the air distribution can be set.

Switching automatic climate control on and off

1. Turn to the left to minimum air volume.
2. After approx. 1 second, turn to the left again.

You switch on the system again by pressing any button of the automatic climate control.

Ventilation



1 Knurled wheels for smoothly opening and closing vent outlets

2 Levers for changing the airflow direction

⚠ Do not drop any foreign objects into the vent outlets; otherwise, they could be catapulted outwards and cause injuries.◀

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance, if the interior has become too warm, etc.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and is not directed straight at you.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter as a standard part of your scheduled maintenance.
You can have more detailed information shown on the Control Display, refer to page 72.

CarManuals2.com

Parked car ventilation

The concept

The parked car ventilation blows air into the passenger compartment to lower interior temperatures.

It is ready to use in the parked-car mode at any outside temperature.

You can set two different times for the system to start. The parked car ventilation can also be switched on and off directly. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Since the system uses a substantial amount of electrical current, you should refrain from activating it twice in succession without allowing the battery to be recharged in normal operation between uses.

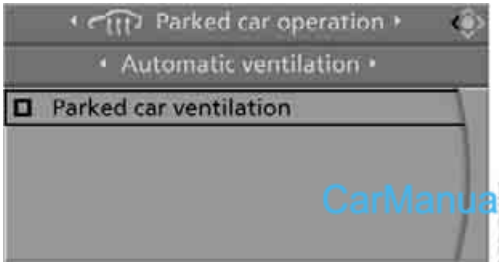
The air emerges through the upper body region vent outlets in the instrument panel. Therefore, please open the vent outlets.

The parked car ventilation system is operated via iDrive.

Switching on and off directly

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Automatic ventilation" and press the controller.
5. Select "Parked car ventilation" and press the controller.



✔ The parked car ventilation is switched on.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Preselecting activation times

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Activation time" and press the controller.
5. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2".

6. Select the time and press the controller. The first time setting is selected.

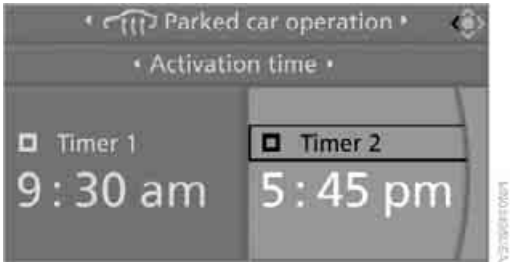
7. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next adjustment is selected.
9. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the time is stored.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Activating timer

Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2" and then press the controller.



The switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control lights up.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes when the parked car ventilation has switched on.

The parked car ventilation is only available for activation within the subsequent 24 hours. Please reactivated it after this time.◀

CarManuals2.com

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled accessories, such as garage and gate or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

If you sell your vehicle one day, delete the saved programs beforehand for your own security, refer to page 109.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Also, comply with the safety precautions of the original hand-held transmitter.◀

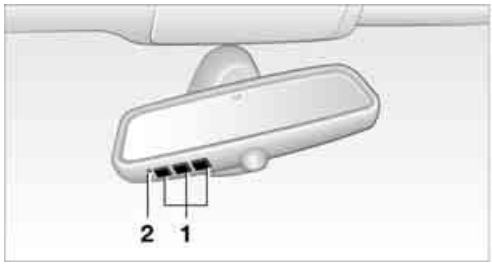
Checking compatibility

If you see this symbol on the packaging or in the manual supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, it is safe to assume that it is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have additional questions, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
Information is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmwusa.com or www.homelink.com.
HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

CarManuals2.com

Programming



1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on ignition, refer to page 59.
2. When using for the first time: press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes quickly. All stored programs are deleted.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 in/10 cm to 12 in/ 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the particular system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit key on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the device when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short time and then remains lit for approx. 2 seconds, this indicates that the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. In the case of an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described at Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the equipment to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization.
When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

CarManuals2.com

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled equipment.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the equipment to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any additional questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes. All stored programs are deleted.

Programs cannot be deleted individually.

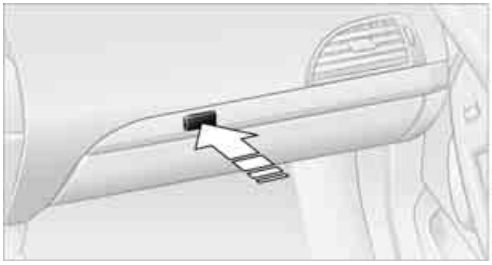
Rememorizing individual programs

1. Hold the original handheld remote control approx. 10 to 30 cm away from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the particular system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote.
3. If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the command button of the original hand-held transmitter. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.

Glove compartment

Opening



Press the button. The glove compartment opens automatically and the lamps come on.

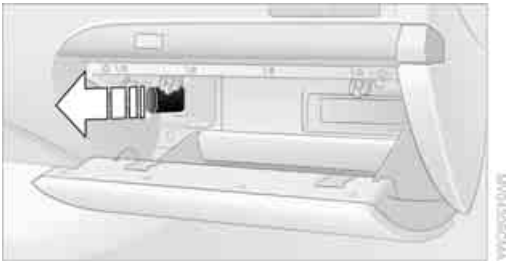
To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

Raise the lid into the closed position.

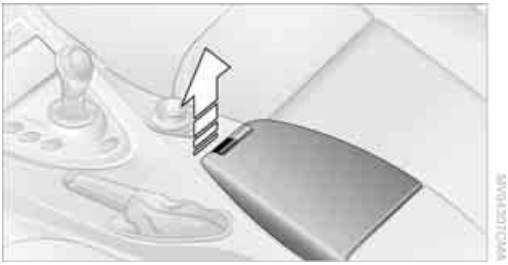
Rechargeable flashlight*

The flashlight is located on the left side of the glove compartment.
The flashlight can remain there continuously. Remove the flashlight from the socket when needed.



Be sure that the flashlight is switched off when it is inserted into its socket. Failure to comply with this precaution could lead to overcharging and damage.◀

Center armrest



A storage compartment is located in the armrest between the front seats. This compartment is integrated into the central locking system and can also be locked separately using the hotel function, refer to page 33.

To open the cover:
Pull the left button. The cover opens and can be folded upward.

CarManuals2.com

Depending on the version, the storage compartment can be equipped with a corresponding cradle* for the telephone or mobile phone.

Connection for external audio device

A connection for an external audio device is located in the storage compartment. You can, for example, connect a CD player or an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers, refer to page 170

Adjusting height

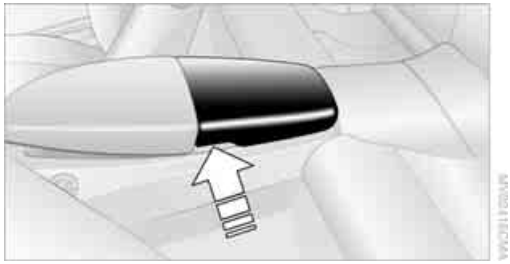
The center armrest can be set in two positions.

Pull the right button:
Move the armrest upward or downward and lock it in the desired position.

Storage compartments

Storage compartments in the passenger compartment

Storage compartment behind center armrest



To open, raise the cover at the left or right edge. The compartment contains the cup holder and the lock for the hotel function, refer to page 33.

Other compartments and nets

Other compartments are provided in the doors as well as in the front center console*.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Ticket pockets are located in the sun visors. Storage nets are located on the backrests of the front seats and in the passenger footwell*.

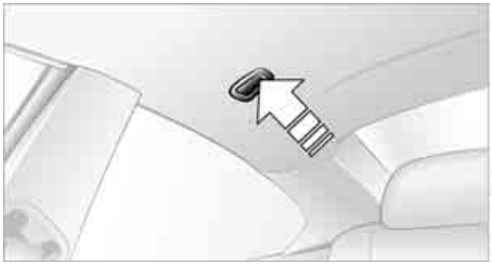
To prevent the risk of injury during an accident, do not stow hard or sharp-edged items in the nets.◀

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

You have the following storage options in the luggage compartment:

- ▷ Storage compartment in the right side trim panel, which is also suitable, if you so desire, for accommodating the vehicle literature.
- ▷ Net at the loading lip for smaller items.

Coupe: clothes hooks



To fold down, press at the top edge.

When hanging clothing on the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do so, they could cause personal injury to occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Cup holders

Use lightweight, unbreakable containers and do not transport hot beverages. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Do not force unsuitable containers into the cup holders, as otherwise damage can result.◀

The compartment of the rear center console contains a built-in cup holder and a removable one.

The removable cup holder can be inserted into the side of the center console.

Ashtray

Opening

Press the trim strip of the cover.

Emptying

Press the opened cover beyond the resistance point, refer to arrow: the ashtray lifts up for removal.

CarManuals2.com

Cigarette lighter

Press in the lighter with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle; otherwise, children could, for example, use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

Connecting electrical devices

Socket

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can be used as a power outlet for hand flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., with power ratings of up to approx. 200 W at 12 V. Avoid damaging the socket by inserting plugs of different shapes or sizes.

In front passenger footwell

Access to the socket:
Fold open the cover.

Ski bag*

The ski bag permits safe and clean transport of up to two pairs of standard skis or one snowboard.

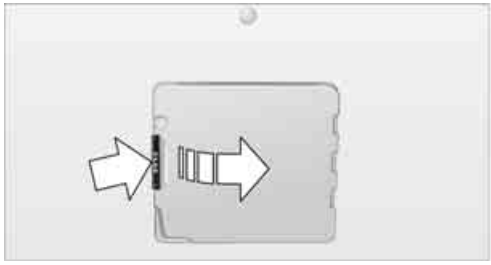
You can use the ski bag to stow skis up to 6.9 ft/ 2.10 m long.

CarManuals2.com

Loading

1. Press the button downward and pull the filler element forward.

2. Extend the ski bag between the front seats. The zipper gives you easy access to stowed items and facilitates drying of the ski bag.
3. Press the button in the luggage compartment.



4. Open the loading flap and use the magnetic holder to secure it to the rear panel.

To stow the ski bag, perform the above steps in reverse order.

Only stow clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges so that no damage occurs.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. To do so, tighten the retaining belt at the buckle.

Secure the ski bag in this way. If you fail to do so, it could endanger vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.

To refit the filler element, insert the two tabs at the bottom into the strip and press the filler element back into place. Make sure that you do not damage the rear seat upholstery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Driving tips

This section is designed to provide you with extra support by supplying information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

CarManuals2.com

Things to remember when driving

Breaking-in

Moving parts need time to adjust to one another. To ensure that your vehicle continues to provide optimized economy of operation throughout an extended service life, we request that you devote careful attention to the following section.

Do not use the driving programs 5 and 6, refer to Drivelogic on page 63, during break-in.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at changing engine and driving speeds, however do not exceed 5,500 rpm or 105 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kick-down mode during these initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km to 3,000 miles/5,000 km

The engine and driving speeds can gradually be increased up to a continuous vehicle speed of 135 mph/220 km/h. Only drive at top speed briefly, e.g. when passing.

Transmission

The function of the transmission is only at its optimized level after driving a distance of approx. 300 miles/500 km. Do not exceed engine speeds of 5,500 rpm during this time.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive reservedly during the first 200 miles/300 km.

CarManuals2.com

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive in a reserved manner during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch is only at its optimized level after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. With manual transmission: During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in instructions again if components mentioned above must be replaced after subsequent driving operation.

General driving notes

Ground clearance

Ensure that sufficient ground clearance is available. To drive down curbs, select the "Sport" program of the EDC Electronic Damping Control, refer to page 85, to keep the ground clearance as uniform as possible. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.◀

Closing luggage compartment lid

Only drive with the luggage compartment lid completely closed, otherwise exhaust can penetrate into the passenger compartment.◀

If it is absolutely necessary to drive with the luggage compartment lid open:

1. Coupe: close both windows.
   Convertible: with closed top, close all windows.
2. Increase the air volume of the automatic climate control to a high level, refer to page 103.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Hot exhaust system

As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated in the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to it, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious property damage as well as personal injury. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise there is a risk of burns.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning, and is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the tread depth of the tires decreases, also refer to Minimum tire tread on page 205.

CarManuals2.com

Driving through water

Do not drive through water on the road if it is deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Starting off

On slopes

The starting assistant enables you to start off conveniently on slopes. The handbrake is not required for this purpose.

1. Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.
2. Release the footbrake and drive off quickly.

The starting assistant holds the vehicle for approx. 1 second after releasing the footbrake. After releasing the footbrake, drive off quickly, otherwise the starting assistant no longer holds the vehicle after approx. 1 second and it begins to roll back.◀

Start off quickly on slopes. Do not hold the vehicle on a hill by pressing the accelerator, but apply the footbrake or handbrake instead. Otherwise, overheating and heavy wear can result in the area of the Sequential Manual Transmission.◀

To protect the clutch of the Sequential Manual Transmission from overheating, the starting-off behavior is changed under heavy loading, e.g. a rapid succession of starts on slopes. This can be noticed from shaking during starting off.

On a slippery surface

1. Select "P 400" program of M Engine Dynamic Control, refer to page 64.
2. Gently press accelerator pedal to prevent wheels from spinning when starting off.

Clutch protection with manual transmission

Be sure to avoid riding the clutch for longer periods.

Your BMW M6 is equipped with an overload protection for the clutch. Riding the clutch for longer periods is detected and the engine management system limits the engine speed to protect the clutch. This can result in the vehicle failing to accelerate when the clutch pedal is partially depressed.

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. In situations that require it, it is best to brake with full force. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsing of he brake pedal indicates that the ABS is controlling braking.

In certain braking situations the perforated brake rotors can cause operating noises which, however, have not effect on the performance and operating safety of the brake system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light but consistent pedal pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When driving on wet roads or in heavy rain, it is a good idea to apply light pressure to the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and thus reduced efficiency of the brake system, downshift to a gear in which only minimal brake applications are needed when descending long or steep downhill stretches. Even light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Sequential Manual Transmission: do not drive in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering.
Manual transmission: do not drive with the clutch depressed, in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering.
Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of movement of the pedals and impair their operation.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

This can also lead to long-lasting decreases in comfort and squeaking noise during braking. These decreases in comfort can also be produced by long braking maneuvers with a low pedal pressure.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

For technical information about the brake system, refer to page 121.

When vehicle is parked

Condensation forms in the automatic climate control during operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Before driving into a car wash

Fold in the exterior mirrors, refer to page 51, otherwise they could be damaged due to the width of the vehicle.

General information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Cargo loading

To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blow-out.◀

Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo bay; otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

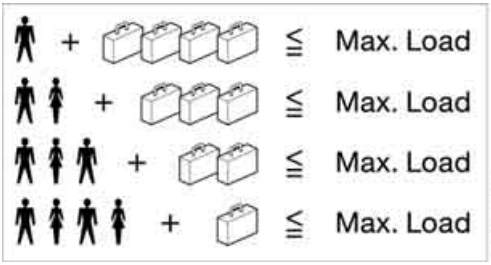
Determining loading limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   ⚠ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs. or YYY kg, as otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and unstable driving conditions may result.◀

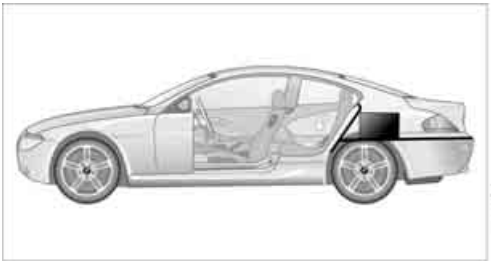
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX lbs. or YYY kg.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the XXX amount equals 800 lbs. and there will be four 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 200 lbs.:
   800 lbs. minus 600 lbs. = 200 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

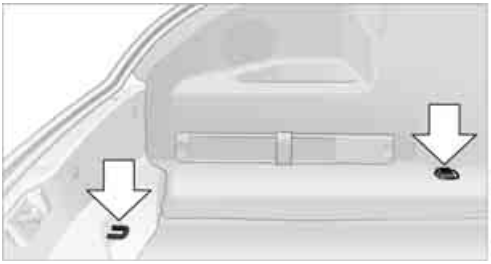
Stowing cargo



▷ Place heavy cargo as far forward and as low as possible, placing it directly behind the bulkhead behind the rear seats.

▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.

Securing cargo



▷ Use the luggage net* or securing straps to hold down small and lightweight luggage and cargo.

▷ Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at

CarManuals2.com

your BMW center. Four lashing eyes mounted in the luggage compartment are used to secure these heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to arrows.

▷ Please observe the special instructions supplied with the heavy-duty cargo straps.

⚠ Position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the vehicle's occupants, for example if sudden braking or evasive maneuvers are necessary.
When fastening lashings, use only the lashing eyes, refer to illustration; otherwise, the lashings could come loose or you could damage the vehicle.
Never exceed the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 235, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also put you in violation of freeway safety laws.
You should never transport unsecured heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment, as they could fly around and pose a safety hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

CarManuals2.com

Pad on base of luggage compartment

You can use the pad as needed, for example to transport soiled objects. The rubberized side is washable and has an anti-skid effect.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

BMW M6 Engineering

V10 High Output Engine

With a 305 cu in/5 liter displacement, the high-speed V10 engine generates a maximum output of 373 kW and a maximum torque of 384 lb ft/520 Nm. Its spontaneous response characteristics yield a very broad usable engine speed range. At the maximum engine speed of 8250 rpm, the flow of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine. Due to the powerful engine dynamics, when the vehicle is at rest, the maximum engine speed is limited to 7000 rpm.

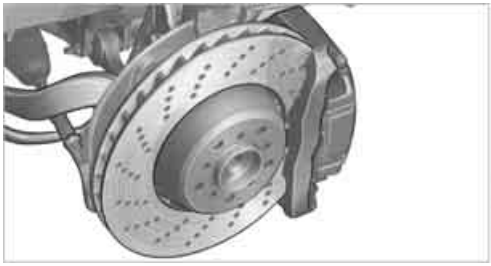
Warming up

The emissions control system causes the V10 high-output engine to have slightly rougher running characteristics during its warm-up phase.

When the engine is cold, the exhaust system has a slightly metallic undertone due to the system design.

For additional information on warming up, refer to Tachometer on page 69 and Engine oil temperature on page 70.

Compound brake



Your BMW M6 has a high-performance brake system with perforated compound brake rotors.

Due to the special structural features of these brake rotors, function noises occur during braking, but this has no effect on the performance, operating safety, and stability of the brakes.

Braking correctly

In order to keep the brake system in optimum condition, it is useful to put them under load at regular intervals in accordance with the nature of the vehicle.

Carmanuals2.com

Also refer to Corrosion on brake rotors on page 118.

Drive train

In your BMW M6, particular importance was attached to the direct connection of the engine to the drive system. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drive train, the transmission of the torque is also audible, as is customary in a sports car. As a result, load shifts can be distinctly audible. This does not in any way impair the function or the service life of the components.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

CarManuals2.com

Starting navigation system*

Your navigation system can use satellites to ascertain the precise position of your vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

CarManuals2.com

Navigation DVD

The navigation system requires a special navigation DVD. The latest version is available at your BMW center.

Inserting navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD with the labeled side up. The navigation DVD is pulled in automatically.
2. Wait several seconds for the system to scan the data from the DVD.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

If the DVD is not ejected from the drive, it is possible that it is blocked. In this case a message is also shown on the Control Display.

Display in the assistance window

You can display the route or the current position in the assistance window. This display remains visible even if you change to another application.

1. Move the controller to the right to enter the assistance window.

2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select the desired route view or "Current position".

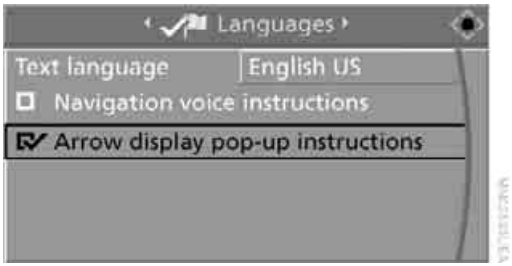
4. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displaying arrow view in map view*

If the navigation system suggests a change of direction, the arrow view is briefly displayed.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Arrow display pop-up instructions" and press the controller.



The arrow view appears in the assistance window.

CarManuals2.com

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Entering destination via voice*, refer to page 129
- ▷ Selecting destination using information, refer to page 132
- ▷ Selecting destination from a list, refer to Destination list, page 133
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 134
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 136

After selecting your destination you can proceed to start the destination guidance, refer to page 138.

You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21.

⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to call up "Navigation".
3. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

The Control Display shows:

- ▷ the arrow view or map view during destination guidance
- ▷ the destination list when destination guidance is switched off

Entering a destination manually

CarManuals2.com

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 137. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.

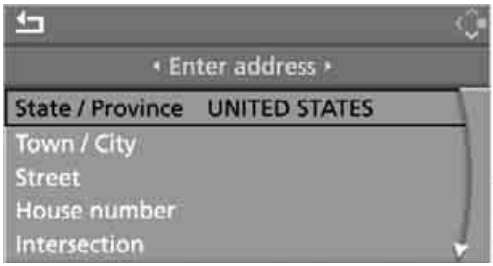
The system also supports you with the following features:

- ▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town or city.
- ▷ You can skip the entry of country and town/city if the current entries are being retained for your new destination.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Selecting country

1. Select "State / Province" or the displayed country and press the controller.



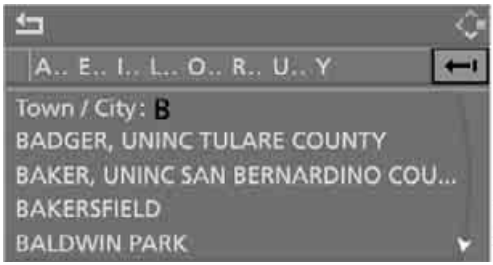
   The list of available countries appears on the display.

2. Select the country of destination and press the controller.

In order to be able to start the destination guidance, at least the town/city of the destination or its zip code must be entered.

Entering destination via town/city name

1. Select "Town / City" or the displayed town/city and press the controller.
2. Select the first letter and press the controller.
   A list of all towns/cities starting with this letter appears on the Control Display.
3. To delete the letter entered if necessary:



   ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.

   ▷ Delete all digits or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller longer.

4. Enter additional letters if necessary.
   The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

   ▷ Enter a blank space if necessary:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.

5. Change to the third field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the town/city name is selected from the list and press the controller.

Entering town/city of destination via zip code

1. Select "Town / City" and press the controller.
2. Enter the zip code:
   Select the individual digits and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

- ▷ Enter a blank space:
  Select the _ symbol and press the controller.
- ▷ Delete individual digits or letters:
  Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.
- ▷ Delete all digits or letters:
  Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller longer.

3. Select the zip code and press the controller.
   The corresponding town/city of destination is displayed.
4. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the town/city of destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering street, house number and intersection

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street and press the controller.
2. Enter the street.
   The street is entered in exactly the same way as the town/city of destination.

The intersection is entered in the same way as the street.

Entering a street without entering town/city of destination

You can also enter a street without entering a destination. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection. The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

CarManuals2.com

If a town/city has already been entered, you can undo this entry. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered town/city of destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

1. Change to upper field.
   The ⟵ arrow is selected.

2. Turn the controller to the right until the request for the entry of a street in the country appears and press the controller.

3. Change to the second field from the top and enter the street.

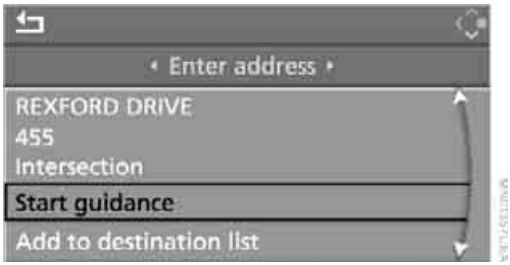
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Entering house number

All house numbers stored for the street on the navigation DVD can be entered.

1. Select "House number" and press the controller.
2. Enter the house number:
   Select the individual digits and press the controller.
3. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the house number is selected and press the controller.

Starting destination guidance with manual destination entry



▷ Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.
CarManuals2.com
Destination guidance starts immediately.

▷ If destination guidance is not to be started immediately:
Select "Add to destination list" and press the controller.
The destination is stored in the destination list, refer to page 133.

Entering destination via voice*

You can enter a desired destination via the voice command system. When entering the destination, it is possible to change between voice command and iDrive at any time. Reactivate the voice command function for this purpose if necessary.

With ›Options‹ you can have the possible commands read aloud.◀

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹

Selecting country

1. Wait for the system to ask for the country of destination.
2. Say the name of the country of destination.

Say the name of the country of destination in the language of the voice command system.

Entering town/city of destination

The town/city of destination can be spelled or entered as an entire word.

Spelling town/city of destination

To enter the town/city of destination, spell it using the customary spelling of the country of destination.
Pronounce the letters smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Spell town/city name:
   Say at least the first three letters of the town/city of destination. The more letters you say, the more exactly the system recognizes the town/city.

   The system can suggest up to 20 towns/cities of destination that match your entries. Up to 6 entries are displayed at once on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

A destination is suggested by the system.

2. Select a town/city:
   - ▷ Select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ Display additional entries of the list: ›Next page‹
   - ▷ To respell the town/city: ›Repeat‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the town/city of destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering the destination as an entire word*

CarManuals2.com

Towns/cities of destination and streets located in the region where the language of the voice command system is spoken can be entered as an entire word.

Example: to enter a US town/city of destination as an entire word, the system language must be English.

Speak smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Wait for the system to request the town/city of destination.
2. Say the name of the town/city of destination.

The system can suggest up to 6 towns/cities of destination that match your entries.

A destination is suggested by the system.

3. Select a town/city:
   - ▷ Select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ Reenter the town/city: ›Repeat‹
   - ▷ Enter town/city of destination by spelling it: ›Spell‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the town/city of destination is selected and press the controller.

▷ Destinations that sound the same which cannot be differentiated by the system are summarized in a separate list and shown as a destination followed by three dots.
Select this entry with ›Yes‹ if necessary. Then select the desired city/town in this list.◀

Entering street and house number

The street is entered in the same way as the town/city of destination.

To enter the house number:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.

Up to 4-digit house numbers can be entered. Say the house number as individual digits.

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Saving destination

The destination is added to the destination list or can be stored in the address book.

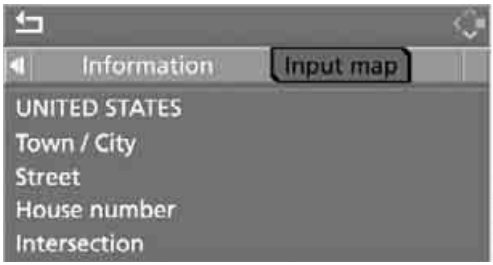
›Add to destination list‹ or
›Add to address book‹

Map-guided destination selection

If you only know the location of the town/city or street of the destination, then you can input the destination by using a map. You can use the cursor to select the destination on the map and then adopt it into the destination guidance.

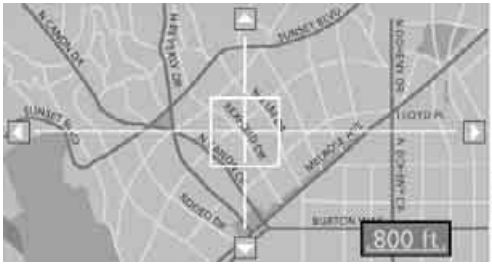
1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Input map" and press the controller.

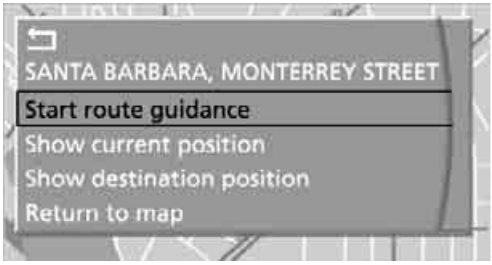


A section of a map is displayed on the Control Display:

- ▷ During destination guidance, around the current destination
- ▷ With the destination guidance deactivated, around the last destination entered



4. Select a destination with the cursor.
   - ▷ Changing scale: turn the controller.
   - ▷ Moving map: move the controller in the corresponding direction.
     The controller can be moved to the left, right, forward and back.
5. Press the controller to accept or store the destination in the destination guidance system.
   The selected town/city of destination and other menu items are displayed.
6. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ "Start route guidance" starts destination guidance.
   - ▷ "Show current position" places the current position in the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Show destination position" places the current destination in the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Return to map" changes back to the "Input map".
   - ▷ Exit the menu.



7. Press the controller.

The map for destination input can also be called up from the map view:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

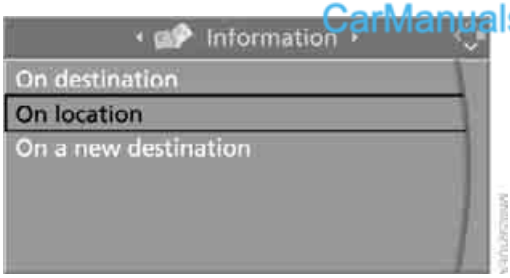
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Selecting destination using information

You can obtain a display of selected destinations, e.g. hotels, sights or hospitals, and adopt them into the destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Select "Information" and press the controller.

3. Select location:
   - ▷ "On destination"
   - ▷ "On location"
   - ▷ "On a new destination"



4. Press the controller.
5. Make your selection, e.g. "Hotels and restaurants", and press the controller.
6. Enter search criteria if necessary, e.g. the maximum distance from the current location.
7. Select "<Start search>" and press the controller.
   These destinations are displayed on the Control Display.

8. Select a destination and press the controller.

   ▷ The scope of the information and symbols is dependent on the respective navigation DVD.◀
9. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To transfer the address to the destination list and start destination guidance: Select the ➡● symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To establish a telephone connection: Select the symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To display additional destinations: Select the ◀▶ symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To start a new search: Select the symbol and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Symbols in map view

If, for example, you have selected the category Hotels, the hotels are shown on the map as symbols.

To hide the symbols in the map view:

1. Select the symbol and press the controller.

2. Select "Hide map icons" and press the controller.

The symbols are hidden.

To display the symbols:
Select "Show map icons" and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Destination list

The last 20 destinations entered into the destination list are displayed. You can select these destinations and adopt them into the destination guidance system.
For example, in order to plan a longer route, you can store all of the destinations you wish to visit in the destination list ahead of time, refer to Entering a destination manually on page 126.

Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

The last destination entered is the first item in the destination list.

➡● This symbol indicates the current destination during destination guide.

To display other destinations in the destination list:
Turn the controller.

Adopting the destination into the destination guidance system

1. Select the desired destination from the destination list and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Editing destination list

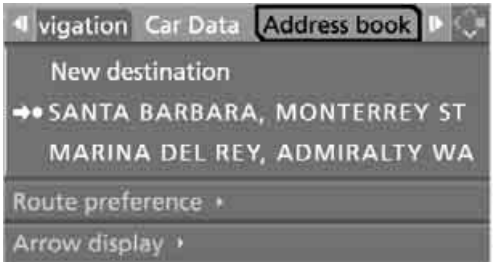
1. Select the desired destination from the destination list and press the controller.
2. The selected destination can be edited:
   - ▷ Saving entry:
     Select "Add to address book".
   - ▷ Displaying information on destination:
     Select "Information on destination".
   - ▷ Deleting entry:
     Select "Delete entry".
   - ▷ Deleting all entries:
     Select "Delete list". Destination guidance is switched off.
   - ▷ Changing entry:
     Select "Edit". For operation, refer to Entering destination via town/city name, page 127.
3. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Address book

Opening address book

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

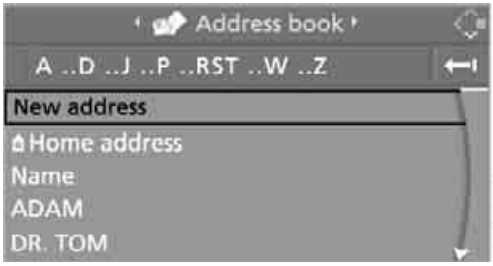


Select "Address book" and press the controller.

Storing destinations in address book

You can store approx. 100 destinations in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select "New address" and press the controller.



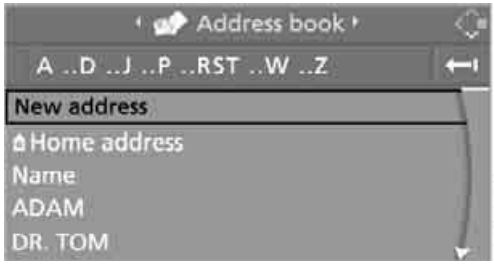
3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.
4. Enter name and address, also refer to Entering a destination manually, page 126.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.
   The entry is stored in the address book.

You can also store a destination from the destination list in the address book, refer to page 133.

Storing current position*

The current position can be adopted into the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New address" is selected and press the controller.



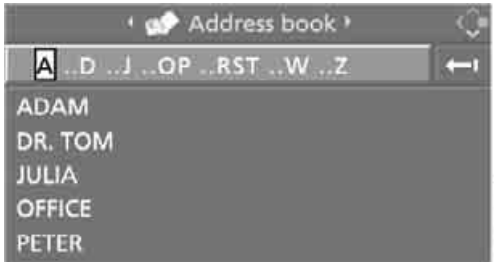
3. Select "Use current location as address" and press the controller.
   The name given can be changed. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 126.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

You can also enter your current position in the address book if you have left the sector covered by the navigation DVD. In this case, you must enter a name.

Selecting destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
   The stored entries are displayed on the Control Display.



2. Select the entry and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

To start destination guidance:
Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing destinations from address book

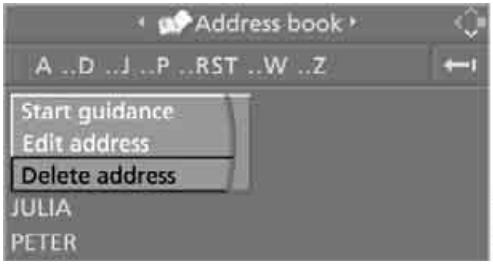
1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Edit address" and press the controller.

4. Change entry.
   For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 126.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Deleting individual destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Delete address" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



4. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Deleting all destinations from address book

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Delete data" is selected and press the controller.

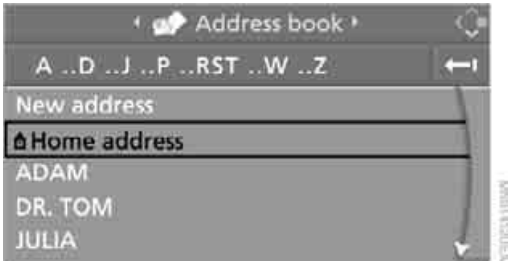
6. Select "Delete address book" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Storing home address

You can store your current position or the current destination as a home address in the address book. This entry is in the second position in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address", or "Save current destination" during the destination guidance, and press the controller.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Adopting home address as destination

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing home address

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Edit address" and press the controller. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 126.

Selecting route

You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like when entering the destination and whenever the destination guidance is active.

The route is planned according to fixed rules, taking the road type into account, e.g. whether it involves freeways or winding roads. The road types are stored on the navigation DVD. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

Changing route criteria

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route preference" is selected and press the controller.

The various criteria are listed on the Control Display.

3. Select a route criterion for the route:
   - ▷ "With highways"
     Freeways and major traffic arteries are given priority.
   - ▷ "Avoid highways"
     Freeways are avoided where possible.
   - ▷ "Fast route"
     The short traveling time, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Short route"
     Short route, regardless of how fast or slow progress will be

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Press the controller.

The route criterion is selected.

5. If necessary, select an additional route criterion and then press the controller:
   - ▷ "Dynamic route"*
     Automatic changing of the route in case of traffic obstructions. Depending on road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated in a way that passes through the traffic obstruction.
   - ▷ "Avoid tollroads"
     Tollroads are avoided where possible.
   - ▷ "Avoid ferries"
     Ferries are avoided where possible.

CarManuals2.com

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

The route criteria can also be changed in the arrow or map view:

1. Select the symbol for the route criterion and press the controller.
2. Select a route criterion and press the controller.

▷ If the route criteria "Avoid highways", "Avoid tollroads" or "Avoid ferries" are selected, the calculation time for the route can increase considerably.◀

Word matching principle

The system supports the word matching principle to make it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns/cities. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored on the navigation DVD as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

- ▷ Names of specific towns/cities can also vary from the official versions, provided that the spelling of the entry corresponds to a standard form used in another country.

  Example:

  Instead of "Munich", you can also enter the German spelling "München" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- ▷ When you are entering the names of towns/cities and streets, the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- ▷ The system only accepts name entries beginning with letters that are stored on the navigation DVD. The system will not accept nonexistent names and addresses.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

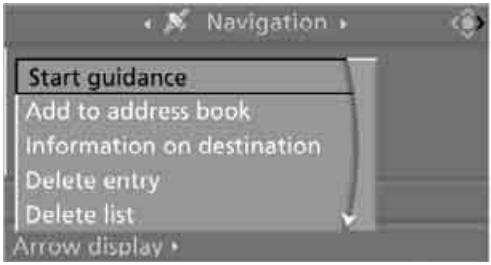
Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

CarManuals2.com

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
2. Select a destination from the destination list and press the controller or enter a new destination, refer to page 126.

3. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



After the route has been calculated, destination guidance is indicated by arrows or a map display on the Control Display.

The destination guidance can also be started in the arrow or map view:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, you can operate other equipment via iDrive at any time. You are notified well in advance of a necessary change of direction by spoken instructions and the display of the direction arrows.

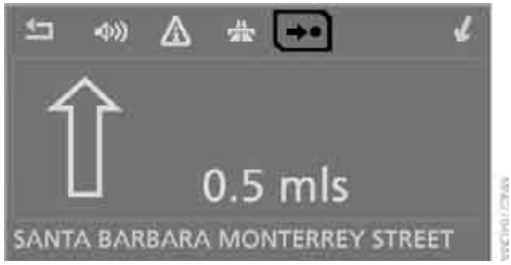
With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

Press the 1 ... 6 button on which the desired destination is stored. Also refer to page 22.

Destination guidance, terminating/continuing

In arrow display or map view

Select the symbol and press the controller.



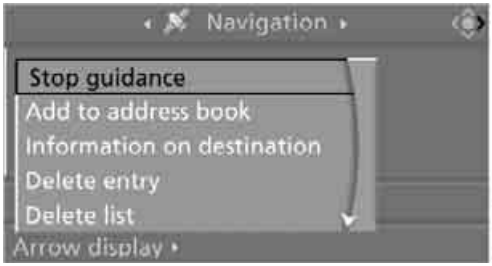
In destination list

This symbol marks the current destination.

1. Select the current destination and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

2. Select "Stop guidance" and press the controller.



If the destination was not reached before the end of the last trip, upon restarting you will see the question:
"Continue guidance to destination?".

The destination guidance starts automatically after a short time.

To start destination guidance immediately: Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Displaying route

You have the option of displaying various views of the route during destination guidance.

▷ From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items, page 18.◀

Displaying arrow display

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Arrow display" is selected and press the controller.

The arrow display is displayed.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Manually displaying traffic information*
3 Selecting route criteria
4 Starting/stopping destination guidance
5 Arrow to destination as the crow flies
6 Distance to the next change of direction
7 Current position
8 Direction of travel
   - ▷ Hollow arrow:
     Destination guidance on the calculated route.
   - ▷ Solid arrow:
     Arrow shows the route to be calculated from a bird's eye view when the vehicle is not located in an area contained on the navigation DVD, e.g. in a parking structure.

Depending on the equipment, the estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are displayed in the top or bottom line of the Control Display.

Before a change of direction, the appearance of the arrow changes.

CarManuals2.com

1 Street name for change of direction

2 Distance to change of direction

3 Change of direction

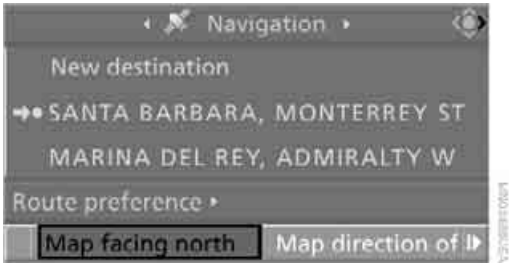
To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

Displaying map view

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired map view is selected:
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"

CarManuals2.com



3. Press the controller.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off

2 Starting/stopping destination guidance

3 Selecting destination using map

4 Displaying the menu in which the information last selected can be displayed/hidden, refer to Selecting destination via information on page 132

5 Changing map view
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"

6 Changing route criteria

7 Manually displaying traffic information*

8 Arrow to destination as the crow flies

The estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are shown in the bottom line of the Control Display.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

At scales of less than 250 miles/500 km, you have the option of deciding whether to orient the map to north or toward your current direction of travel. At scales of 250 miles/500 km or greater, the map always points toward north.

Changing map view

Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.
The next map view is displayed.

Changing scale

Turn the controller to change the scale.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displaying streets and towns/cities of route

You can have the roads and towns along the route displayed during destination guidance.

The distances remaining to be traveled on each individual road are also displayed.

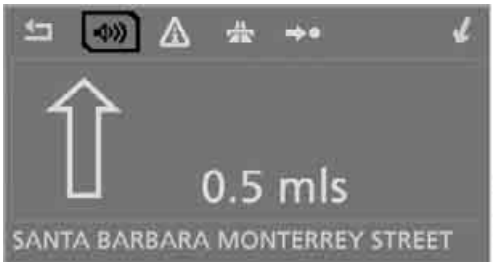
CarManuals2.com

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route list" is selected and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination guidance via voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

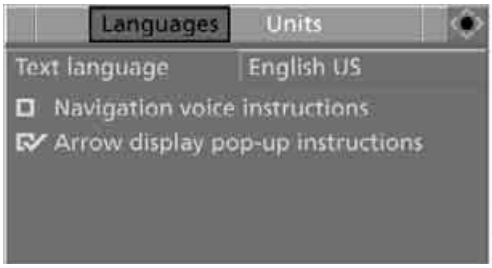


During destination guidance, voice instructions can be switched on or off in the arrow or map view:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

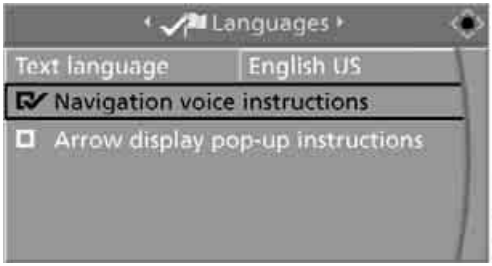
To switch the voice instructions on/off at any time:

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Navigation voice instructions" and press the controller.



The voice instructions are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use*.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Repeating and canceling voice instructions

With the programmable button on the steering wheel you can also make the following settings, refer to page 53:

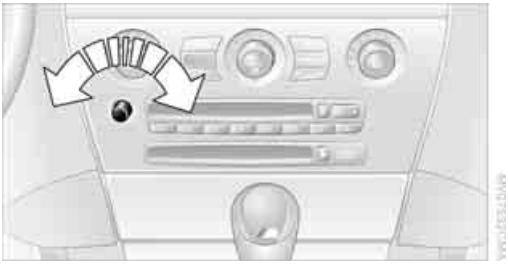
▷ Repeat the voice instruction:
Press the button.

▷ Switch voice instructions on/off:
Press button longer.

Setting volume of voice instructions

The volume can only be adjusted during a voice instruction.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if required.
2. Turn the knob during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.



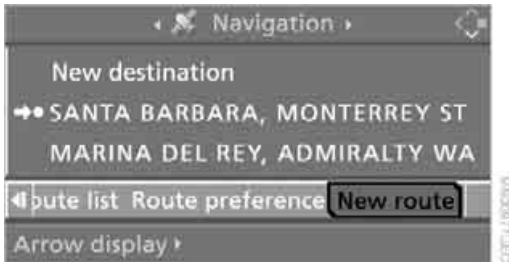
This volume is independent of the volume of the audio sources.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Bypassing route sections

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New route" is selected and press the controller.



3. Turn the controller to enter the desired number and press the controller.

The route is recalculated.

To exit from the menu without changing the route:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Traffic information*

In many congested areas, you can receive traffic information transmitted by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic management centers and the traffic information is periodically updated.
During destination guidance, the traffic information relevant to your planned route is automatically displayed. Whether destination guidance is active or not, you can have the traffic information displayed in the map view or in the traffic info list.

Switching reception of traffic information on/off

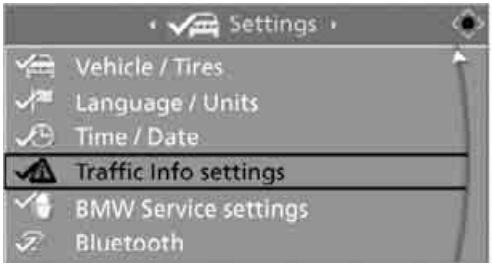
1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

CarManuals2.com

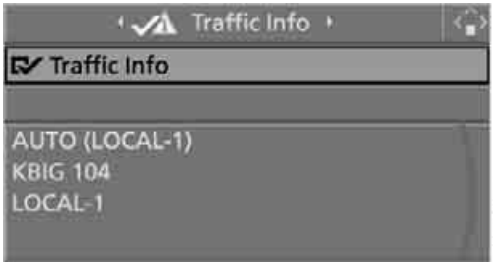
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Traffic Info settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.



The traffic information can be received and displayed.

"AUTO": automatic selection of the Traffic Info station with the strongest reception.

Depending on the station, either the station name, frequency, local number or other information is displayed.◀

CarManuals2.com

Manually displaying traffic information

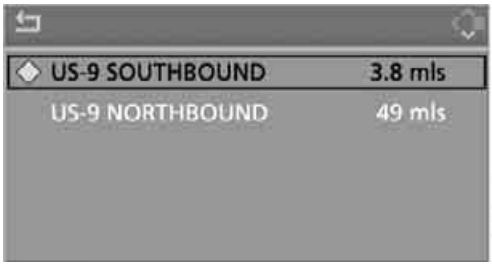
During destination guidance

During destination guidance, traffic information can be displayed in the arrow or map view.

If the ⚠ symbol is shown with a red border, traffic information is available for the planned route.

Select the ⚠ symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, the traffic information on the planned route is marked with a yellow diamond.



First the traffic information along the planned route is shown sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

With destination guidance switched off

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to call up "Navigation".
3. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.

First the traffic information along the planned route is shown sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

Depiction of traffic information in map view

The traffic information symbols are shown in the map view up to a scale of 100 miles/200 km.

The section of the route affected by a traffic report as well as the number for the type of incident are displayed and hidden. This occurs as a function of the scale selected.

CarManuals2.com

Displaying detailed traffic information

Select a traffic information item from the list and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

Symbols for traffic information

- Traffic event with map scales greater than 5 miles/10 km, arrow points in the direction of travel concerned
- Several traffic events have been received. Select a smaller scale to display these individually.
- Traffic light failure
- Roadwork
- General traffic obstruction
  Transport of hazardous load
  Vehicle on wrong carriage way
- Danger
- Low clearance
- No parking
- Fog
- Heavy rain
- Slippery road
- Cross winds
- Smog
- Road close
- Slow traffic
- Traffic back up
- Stopped traffic
- Icy roads
- Uneven surface
- Accident

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Lane closure

Delay

Police checkpoint

Slow traffic or other event

Stop-and-go traffic

Stopped traffic

Traffic event in both directions of travel

CarManuals2.com

Traffic information during destination guidance

System response will vary depending on whether or not "Dynamic route" is selected.

Displaying traffic obstructions

If a traffic obstruction is reported to the navigation system and "Dynamic route" is not selected, you will be provided with certain information from a distance of approx. 25 miles/ 40 km, e.g. the length of the traffic congestion. The last possible junction will be displayed shortly before this.

This information is also displayed if you have called up a different application on the Control Display.

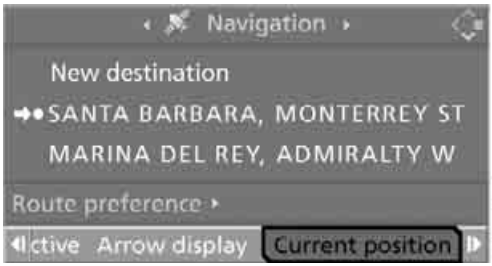
Dynamic route planning

When "Dynamic route" is selected, the route will be changed automatically in the event of a traffic obstruction. The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route. Depending on road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.

Displaying current position

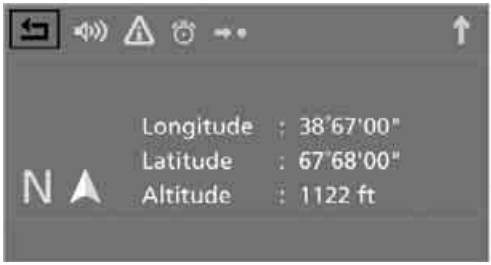
You can also display your current position with the destination guidance switched off.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Current position" is selected and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The current position of your BMW is displayed.



If the navigation system is unable to identify a town or city, your current map coordinates will appear.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

You can also have the current position displayed on a map, refer to page 140.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- a navigation DVD is inserted, but the request to insert the DVD is displayed on the Control Display?
  The navigation DVD may not be the right DVD for the navigation system. The DVD is labeled accordingly.
- you request the current position of your vehicle, but do not receive a precise display?
  The system is unable to receive enough GPS signals at your current position due to obstructions, your position is not yet available on your navigation DVD, or the system is in the process of calculating your position. As a rule, reception is guaranteed in the open air.
- the destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the destination guidance does not accept a destination without the street name?
  On the navigation DVD, no downtown area can be determined for the city or town entered. Enter any street, or a destination such as the railway station etc., then start the destination guidance.
- you want to enter a destination for the destination guidance, but it is not possible to select the letters for your desired entry?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. In this case, the system will not offer you any letters to choose from. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the system stops furnishing directions on which way to turn as you approach intersections?
  You are driving in an area that has not yet been completely recorded on the navigation DVD. Instead of an arrow indicating a turn, you will see an arrow which indicates the general direction of your planned route. Or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new recommended route.
- the navigation system does not react to entries?
  If the battery was disconnected, it takes about 10 minutes before the system is once again operational.

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Entertainment

This chapter describes the operation of the radio and CD player as well as their tone settings.

CarManuals2.com

On/off and tone

The following audio sources have shared controls and setting options:

- Professional* radio or Business radio
- CD player
- CD changer*

Controls

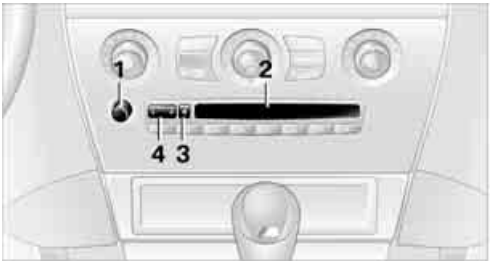
The audio sources can be operated using:

- Buttons in the area of the CD player
- iDrive
- Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- Programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21

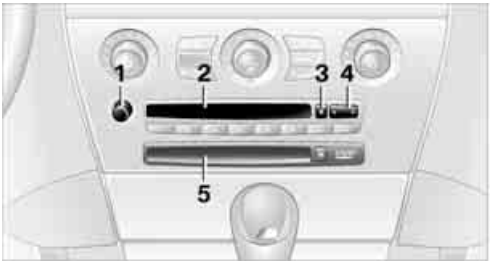
Buttons near CD player

The layout of the buttons can vary depending on your vehicle's equipment.

One drive:



Two drives:



1 Entertainment sound output on/off, volume
   - Press: switch on/off.
     When the system is switched on, the most recently selected radio station or CD track is played.
   - Turn: adjust volume.
2 Drive for audio CDs
3 Eject CD
4 Station scan/track search
   - Change radio station.
   - Select track for CD player and CD changer.
5 Drive for navigation DVDs

CarManuals2.com

Operating via iDrive

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".

You have the following choices:

- "FM" and "AM": radio reception
- "WB": Weather Band station
- "SAT": satellite radio
- "CD": CD player or CD changer
- "AUX": AUX-In connection
- USB/audio interface*
- "Set": depending on the audio source, other adjustments can be made, e.g. with the radio: update station with strongest reception, store station, tone control, sample stations.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items, page 18.◀

With the ignition key in radio-ready position or higher, the selected audio source is stored for the remote control currently in use.

CarManuals2.com

Switching on/off

To switch the Entertainment sound output on/off:
Press knob **1** next to the CD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

For a single drive, the sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes with the ignition switched off.
To do so, switch the sound output on again.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD player until the desired volume is set.

You can also adjust the volume with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

From radio readiness, the setting for the remote control used at the moment is saved.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass, or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The sound settings are globally adjusted for all audio sources.

From radio readiness, the settings are saved for the remote control used at the moment.

Changing tone settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.

The tone settings can also be selected when you have opened "Entertainment" in the start menu:
Select "Set" and then "Tone", and press the controller.

Treble and bass

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Treble / Bass" is selected and press the controller.

2. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Treble" or "Bass".

3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Balance and fader

You can adjust the volume distribution in the same manner as "Treble / Bass".

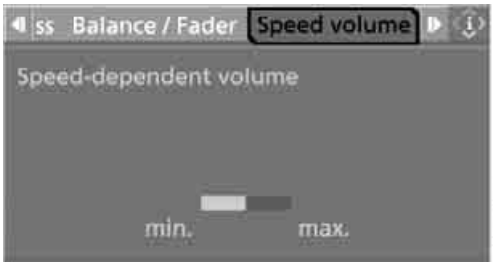
▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Speed-dependent volume control

The speed-dependent volume control automatically increases the volume with increasing speed. You can set various stages for the increase in volume.

1. Select "Speed volume" and press the controller.



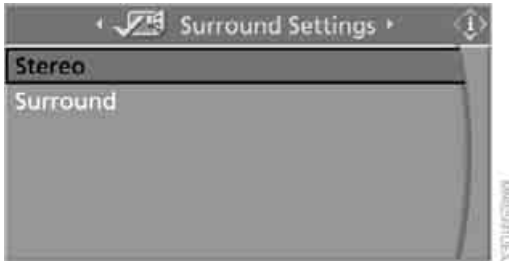
2. Turn the controller:
   The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

Individual high-end sound system*

You can choose between Stereo and Surround.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.

2. Select "Stereo" or "Surround".



3. Press the controller.
   The spatial sound effect is activated.

Professional LOGIC7 HiFi System*

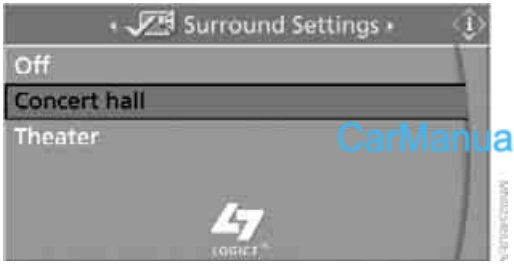
You can select a spatial sound effect that improves the spatial acoustics in all frequency ranges.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

2. Select "Concert hall" or "Theater".



3. Press the controller.
   LOGIC7 spatial sound is switched on.

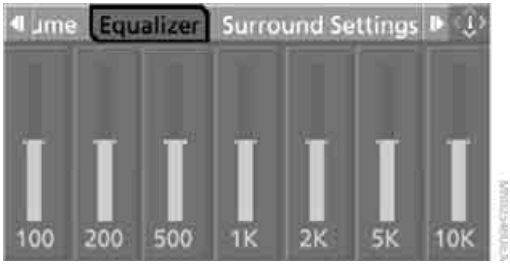
To switch off spatial sound:
Select "Off" and press the controller.

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trade marks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

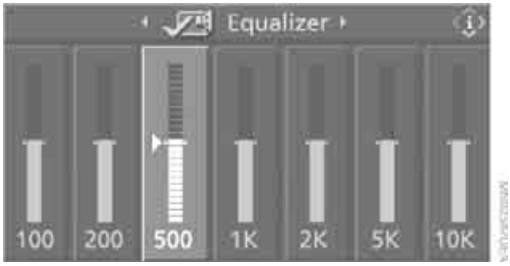
Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges:

1. Select "Equalizer" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select the desired frequency range.



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default settings.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Reset" is selected and press the controller.

With two drives: select "Yes".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Radio

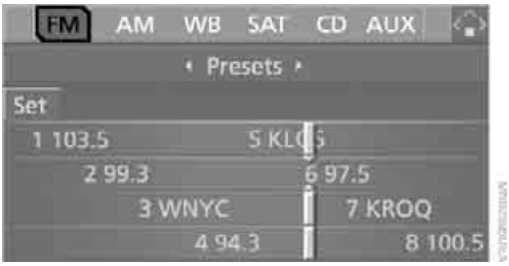
Your radio provides reception of the FM and AM wavebands.

CarManuals2.com

Listening to radio

Press the button if the sound output is switched off.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FM" or "AM" is selected.



4. Press the controller.

Stations are shown on the Control Display on the basis of various selection criteria, e.g. "Presets".

If "Autostore" does not display any stations or if the stations displayed can no longer be received, to update the station with the strongest signal, refer to page 156.

Changing stations

Turn the controller.

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

Professional* radio

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "All stations":
  Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.
- ▷ "Autostore":
  The stations with the strongest received signals in the "AM" waveband.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have stored, refer to page 156.
- ▷ "Manual":
  To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually on page 155.

Business radio

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "Autostore":
  The stations with the strongest signal, refer to page 156.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have stored, refer to page 156.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ "Manual":
To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually.

Changing selection criteria

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

▷ "All stations":
Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.

▷ "Autostore":
The stations with the strongest received signals in the "AM" waveband.

▷ "Presets":
Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 156.

▷ "Manual":
To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually.

1. Change into the second field from the top.
2. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.

Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next displayed station.
You can also change stations with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

CarManuals2.com

Sampling stations, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the stations on the current waveband.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

The stations are sampled.

To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the stations, and the radio remains on the current station.

Buttons next to CD player

To sample the stations, press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

To stop scanning, press the button again.

Selecting frequency manually

With "Manual" you can select stations that are received in addition to those displayed.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Manual" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller to set a certain frequency.

Updating stations with best reception

Radio Professional on "AM" and Radio Business:
If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception signal.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller. "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.

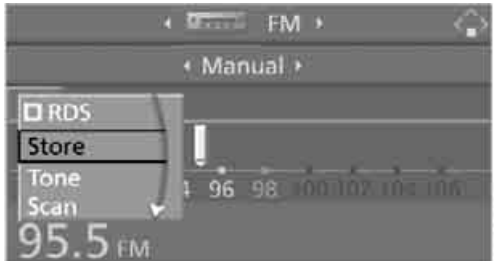
The display of the stations with the best reception is updated. The frequencies of the stations are displayed.

Storing stations

CarManuals2.com

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.
3. Select the desired frequency or station. "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Store" and press the controller.



"Presets" is displayed.

6. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
7. Press the controller.
   The station is stored.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The stations of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

From radio readiness, the stations are saved for the remote control used at the moment.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can also store a station on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, also refer to page 21.

1. Select a station.
2. 1 ... 6 Press and hold desired button.

Changing a memory position

1. Select "Presets" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired station.
   "Set" is selected.
3. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
4. Select "Store" and press the controller.

5. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
   The number of the memory position appears beside the name or frequency of the station.

CarManuals2.com

6. Press the controller.
   The station is stored.

RDS Radio Data System

In the FM frequency range, additional information is transmitted via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. Select "FM" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "RDS" and press the controller.

RDS is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Automatically sorting stations*

For the "All stations" selection criterion, you can set whether the most frequently used stations are displayed at the beginning.

1. Select "All stations" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Select "Favorites" and press the controller.

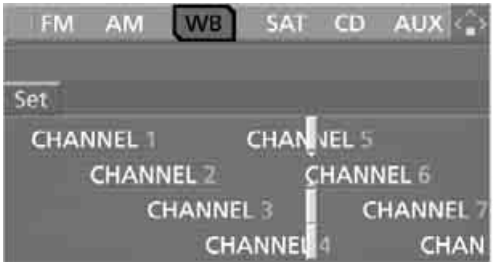
The most frequently used stations are shown at the beginning.

Weather news flashes*

Weather Radio is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the US Department of Trade. Weather news flashes are repeated every 4 to 6 minutes and are routinely updated at intervals of 1 to 3 hours, and more often when necessary. Most stations operate 24 hours a day. In case of a storm, the National Weather Service interrupts the routine weather news and transmits special warning messages instead. If you have a question about NOAA Weather Radio, please contact the nearest office of the National Weather Service. Details are also provided on the Internet at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Calling up weather news flashes

1. Select "WB" and press the controller.



2. Select a station.

The station for weather news flashes may be unavailable in some regions.

High Definition Radio*

Many stations transmit both analog and digital signals. You can receive these stations digitally and with improved sound quality.

A digital radio network must be available in order to receive digital stations.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field. Turn the controller until "HD radio" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Off" and press the controller.

The reception of digital stations is activated.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.

With some stations the digital signals are not transmitted simultaneously with the analog signals. If you are in an area in which the selected station is not continuously received digitally,

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

playback switches between analog and digital reception. This can result in repetitions or interruptions. In this case it may be advisable to deactivate digital radio reception.

Selecting programs of a digital station*

CarManuals2.com

Some stations transmit several programs.
To select one of these programs:

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.

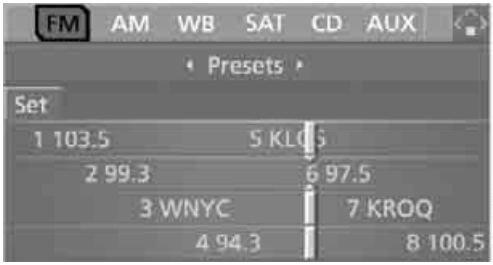
2. Select "Manual" and press the controller.
3. Select a station that is received digitally.
   HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.
4. ◄ ► Switch to the next program of the digital station with the buttons on the radio or the steering wheel.

You can store a station, refer to page 156.

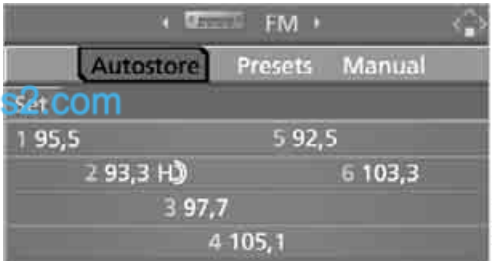
Updating stations offering digital reception

If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception signal.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.



2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.



4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore HD" and press the controller.

The display of the stations offering digital reception is updated. This can take up to 2 minutes.

Displaying additional information

With the digital stations, additional information on the current track is displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Select a station and press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The information is displayed.

If a digital station is received again when the station is changed, the additional information will be displayed again following a brief interruption.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Satellite radio*

You can receive up to 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have this package enabled.

With this new technology the signal may fail, causing interruptions in reception.◀

Enabling or disabling channels

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Select "SAT".

4. Press the controller.

The channels are displayed.
✔ These channels are enabled.

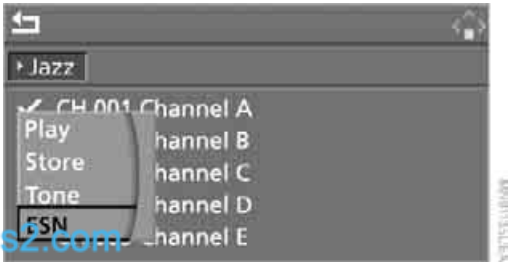
Enabling

1. Select a channel that has not yet been enabled and press the controller.
   A telephone number and the electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required for enabling or disabling.◀
2. To enable the channels:
   Dial phone number.

Disabling

1. Select an enabled channel and press the controller.



2. Select "ESN" and press the controller.
   The electronic serial number, ESN, is displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required to disable.◀
3. To have the channels disabled:
   Dial phone number.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Selecting and storing channel

1. Select "SAT" and press the controller.

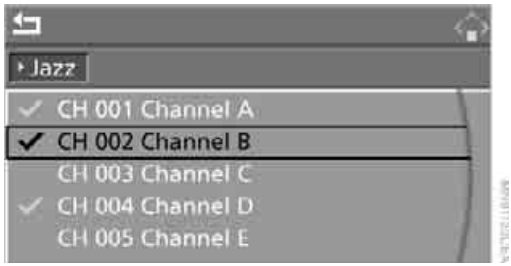
Channels or categories appear in the Control Display.

2. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Presets":
     Up to twelve channels you have stored previously.
   - ▷ "All channels":
     All channels are displayed.
   - ▷ "Categories":
     All channels sorted by category, e.g. news, jazz.

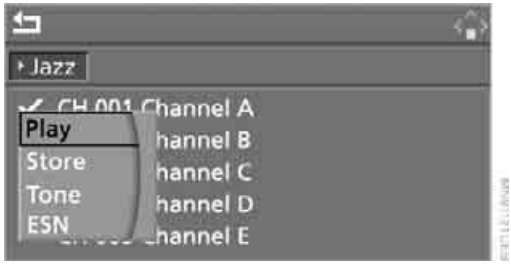
3. Press the controller.
4. If "Categories" has been selected:
   Select the desired category and press the controller.

The channels of this category are displayed.

5. ✔ Select a channel marked with this symbol.

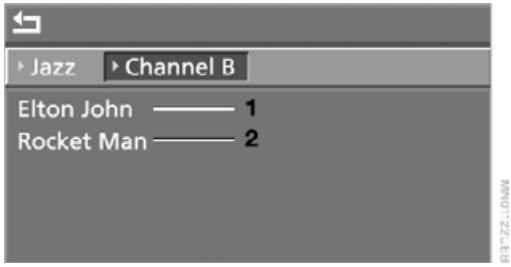


6. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
7. Select "Play" and press the controller.



Additional information

The name of the channel and additional information on the current track are displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.



1 Artist

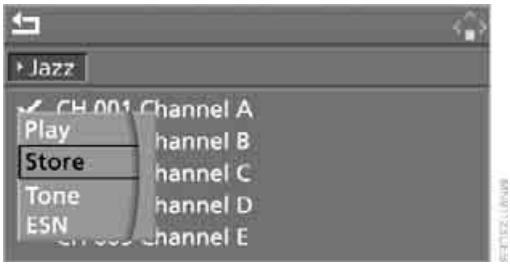
2 Track

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Storing channel

1. Select the desired channel.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Store" and press the controller.



   "Presets" is displayed.
4. Turn the controller to select a memory position and press the controller.

The channel is stored. The stations of the last selection criterion are displayed again after a short time.

Changing channel with buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next enabled channel.

Notes

If no signal can be received for more than 4 seconds, a message is displayed on the Control Display.

Reception may not be possible for certain reasons, e.g. environmental influences or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings, near trees, mountains or other sources of radio interference.
Reception is usually possible again as soon as the signal is available again.◀

CarManuals2.com

CD player and CD changer*

Listening to CDs

Compressed audio files*

CDs with compressed audio files, i.e. MP3, can be played by the CD player, but not by the CD changer.

CD player: starting CD

With two drives:
The upper drive is for audio CDs.

Insert the CD into the drive with the labeled side up. The CD is automatically pulled in.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs with compressed audio files, it can take up to approx. 1 minute to read in the data depending on the directory structure.

To start playback when there is already a CD in the drive:

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.

4. With a CD changer, change to the second field from the top and turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
   The CD player is started.

Playback starts automatically if the sound output is switched on.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can store the function CD player on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start the CD player, refer to page 21.

Press the ⏏ button next to CD player.
The CD emerges slightly from the drive.

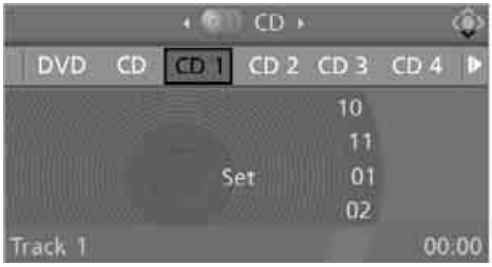
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CD changer: starting CD

Fill the CD magazine and insert, refer to page 168.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
4. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the desired CD, CD 1 - 6, is selected and press the controller.



At the end of the last track, the next CD will be selected.

If the CD magazine has been newly filled, play-back begins with the lowest CD, e.g. CD 1, track 1.

The CD magazine's load status is indicated on the Control Display.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can store a CD compartment of the CD changer on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start the CD changer, refer to page 21.

Selecting a track

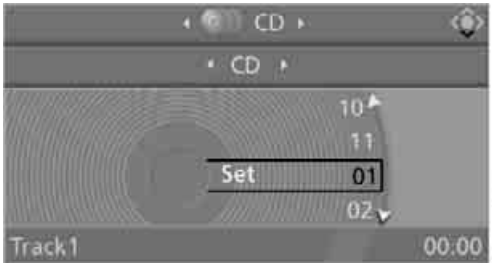
Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.
The CD will start to play at the start of the track. The track is displayed on the Control Display.

You can also change the track with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

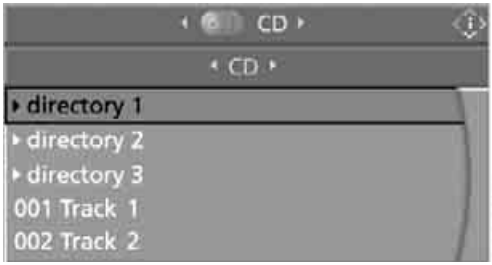
Via iDrive

Select a track by turning the controller.



Compressed audio files*

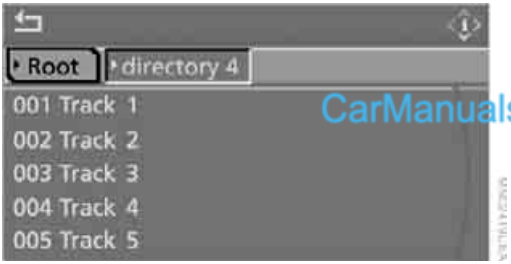
1. Select the directory if necessary and press the controller.



2. Select the track and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

To change the directory:
Select the directory and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

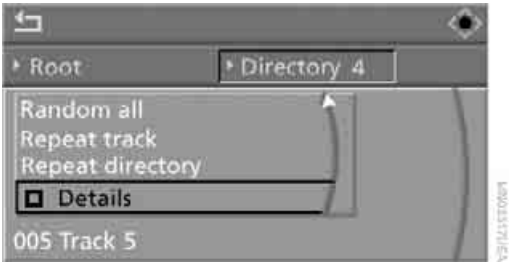
To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

You can store a certain track on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21.

Displaying information on track*

With compressed audio files, you can display possibly included information about the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



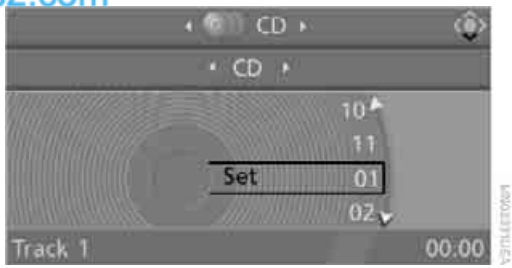
The information about the current track is displayed.

From radio readiness, the setting for the remote control used at the moment is saved.

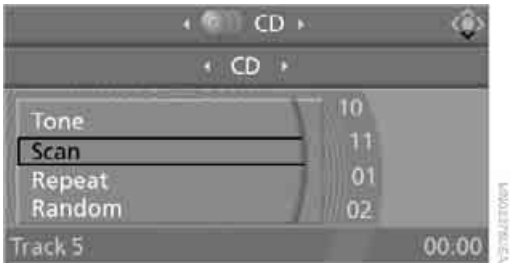
Sampling tracks, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the tracks on the current CD.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.



To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the tracks, and the player remains on the current track.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the current directory, select "Scan directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the CD, select "Scan all" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

To end scan search:

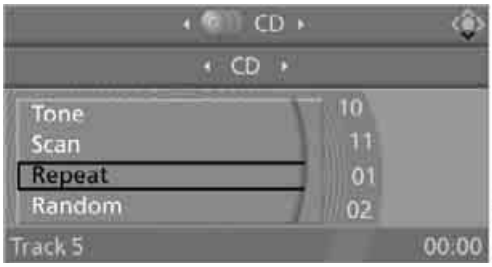
1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan directory" or "Scan all" and press the controller.

This cancels the scan search and the player remains on the current track.

Repeating track

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.

2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.



The current track on the CD is repeated.

To cancel repeat mode:

1. Press the controller again.
2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To repeat the selected track, select "Repeat track" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To repeat all tracks of the current directory, select "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

To cancel repeat mode:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" or "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

In this mode, the tracks on the current CD are played once in a random sequence.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

To cancel random mode:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To play all tracks of the current directory in random order, select "Random directory" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ To play all tracks of the CD in random order, select "Random all" and press the controller.

To cancel random mode:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random directory" or "Random all" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

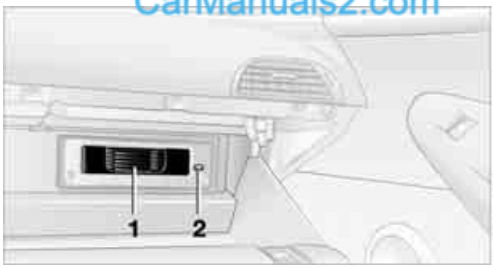
CD magazine

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove compartment.

Removing CD magazine

To insert CDs into the CD magazine **1** or remove them from it, you must first remove the magazine from the CD changer:

CarManuals2.com

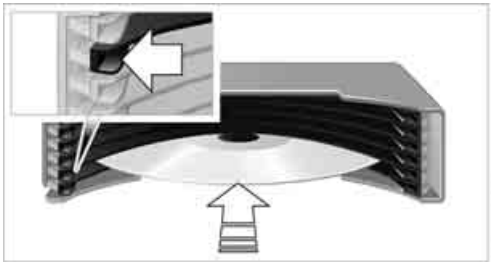


Press button **2** to eject the CD magazine **1**.

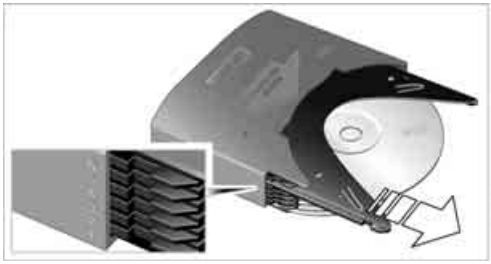
Wait at least 2 seconds before pushing in the magazine again so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

Inserting/removing CDs into/from CD magazine

When inserting or removing CDs, remember to hold them only by their edges, taking care to avoid touching the reflective CD memory surface.

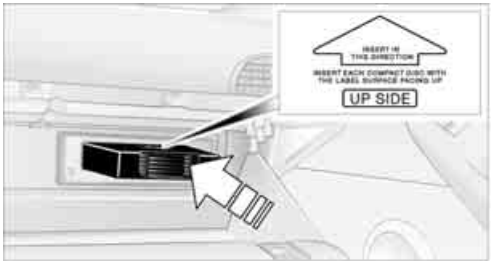


To insert:
Insert one CD into each compartment of the magazine with the labeled side up.



To remove:
Pull out the desired tray and remove the CD.

Inserting CD magazine



Push in the CD magazine as far as possible in the direction of the arrow.

The CD changer automatically reads in the inserted CDs and is then ready for operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Notes

⚠ BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs with adhesive labels as these can come loose during playback due to heat build-up and cause irreparable damage to the system.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. Single-CDs, otherwise the CDs or the adapter can jam and may no longer be ejected.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}; otherwise, the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes.

Home-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g., inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or advanced age of the CD/DVD blank.

Label CDs/DVDs only on the top, using a marker designed for this purpose.

Damaged CDs/DVDs

Avoid fingerprints dust, scratches, and moisture.
Keep CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F/50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CarManuals2.com

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

Manufacturers often provide CDs/DVDs with copy protection. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

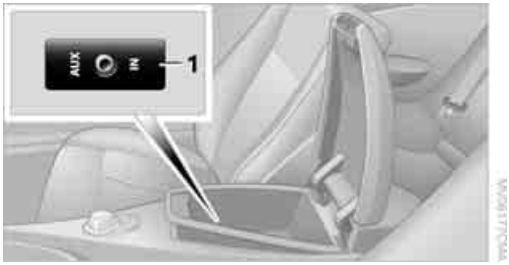
Care

If necessary, clean the reflective scanning side of the CDs/DVDs with a commercially available cleaning cloth by wiping in straight lines from the center outward.

AUX-In connection

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers. The sound can be adjusted via iDrive.

Connecting



For audio playback via the vehicle loudspeakers, connect the headphones or the line-out connection of the device to the socket **1** with a 1/8 in/3,5 mm jack plug.

Starting audio playback

The audio device must be switched on.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "AUX" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "AUX" and press the controller.
5. Adjust volume and sound if necessary.

CarManuals2.com

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can save the function audio AUX on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start audio playback, refer to page 21.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

USB/audio interface*

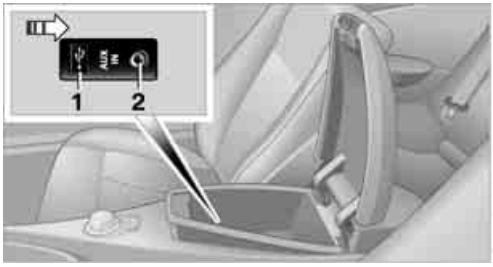
You can connect audio devices to the USB/ audio interface, e.g. an iPod or a USB device (MP3 player, USB memory stick). You can then operate these via iDrive.

The system can play back common audio files, e.g. MP3, WMA, WAV (PCM) and ACC, as well as playback lists in the M3U format.

Due to the large number of audio devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every audio device.

Ask your BMW center which audio devices are suitable.

Connecting



1 USB interface

2 Connection for audio playback: 1/8 in/3,5 mm jack plug

iPod

To connect the iPod, use the BMW cable adapter for Apple iPods. For more information, please contact a BMW center or consult our website: www.bmw.com

For audio playback via the vehicle loudspeakers, connect the iPod to the connections **1** and **2**.

The menu structure of the iPod is supported by the USB/audio interface.

CarManuals2.com

USB storage medium

Use a flexible adapter cable for connection to protect the USB interface and your USB device against mechanical damage.◀

For audio playback via the vehicle loudspeakers, connect the USB device to the connection **1**.

After connecting for the first time, the information of all tracks (e.g. artist, music genre) and the playback lists of the USB device are transferred to the vehicle. This process can take some time. The time required is dependent on the USB device and on the number of tracks.

During the transfer you can select the tracks via the directories and file names.

Following the transfer you can call up the tracks via the information and playback lists.

The information of up to four USB devices can be stored in the vehicle, for a total of approx. 20,000 tracks.

If a fifth USB device is connected, the information of the tracks of the first USB device stored in the vehicle is deleted.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.◀

Starting audio playback

Via iDrive

If the audio device has a device name, this will be displayed if possible.

1. Press the MENU button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "AUX" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "USB" or the name of the audio device and press the controller.

5. The playback starts with the first track.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can save the function "USB" on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start audio playback, refer to page 21.

Selecting a track

You can call up the tracks via the playback lists and information. With USB devices you can also call up the tracks via the file directory.

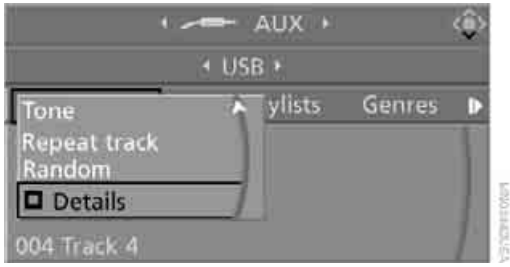
1. Make your selection, e.g. "Playlists" or "Artists", and press the controller.

2. Select the track and press the controller.

Displaying information on track

You can display any information stored on the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller during playback.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



The information about the current track is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Repeating track

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" and press the controller.

To cancel repeat mode:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

You can play back the tracks of the selected list in random order, e.g. all tracks of an artist.

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

End random playback:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

Do not subject the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. extremely high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device. Otherwise, the audio device can be damaged and the resulting distraction can reduce road safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 Kbit/s, proper playback cannot always be ensured.

Connecting instructions

- ▷ The USB/audio interface supplies the connected audio device with power, provided the audio device supports this function. It is therefore unnecessary to connect the audio device to a socket in the vehicle during operation.
- ▷ Do not force the plug into the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect any devices, e.g. fans or lamps, to the USB/audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard disks.
- ▷ Do not use the audio interface to recharge external devices.

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Communications

This chapter summarizes how to operate your mobile phone using iDrive or voice control and how to use BMW Assist or TeleService.

Telephoning*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full mobile phone preparation package. After a suitable mobile phone has been paired in the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via iDrive, with the buttons on the steering wheel and by voice.

A mobile phone that has been paired once is automatically detected again as soon as it is brought back inside the vehicle, provided that the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. The pairing data of up to four mobile phones can be stored simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected simultaneously, the most recently paired mobile phone can be operated via the vehicle.

Using a phone in your vehicle

Using snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a mobile phone cradle, enables the battery to be charged and the mobile phone to be connected to the external antenna of your vehicle. This ensures improved network reception and a consistent voice reproduction quality. Ask your BMW center which mobile phones snap-in adapters are offered for.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when traffic conditions allow you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving, use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Ask your BMW center which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package or which mobile phones will fit in the snap-in adapters they offer. These mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual, provided they are running a certain software version. Malfunctions can occur with other mobile phones.

Care instructions

You can find what you need to know about caring for your mobile phone in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure and in the mobile phone operating instructions.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone* using:

- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 16
- ▷ Voice commands, refer to page 187
- ▷ Programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21

Avoid operating a mobile phone detected by the vehicle with the keypad of the mobile phone, otherwise malfunctions can occur.

Placing phone calls with BMW Assist system*: BMW Assist calls

You can use the BMW Assist system via the hands-free unit for BMW Assist calls.

When the status information "BMW Assist" or "BMW Service" is displayed in "Communication", only BMW Assist calls are possible.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

It may not be possible to establish a telephone connection using the mobile phone while a connection is being established to BMW Assist or while a call to BMW Assist is already in progress. If this happens, you must unpair the mobile phone and the vehicle if you wish to place a call with the mobile phone.

CarManuals2.com

Initial operation

Pairing mobile phone in vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ Suitable mobile phone: the mobile phone is supported by the full mobile phone preparation package. Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmw.com
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The Bluetooth links of the vehicle, refer to page 181, and the mobile phone are active.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, presets in the mobile phone are required: e.g. via the following menu items:
  - ▷ Bluetooth activated
  - ▷ Connection not with confirmation
  - ▷ Reconnect
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone model, the setting energy saving mode can, for example, result in vehicle failing to detect the paired mobile phone.
- ▷ Specify any desired number as the Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 1, for pairing. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required following successful pairing.
- ▷ The ignition is switched on.

⚠ Only pair the mobile phone with the vehicle stopped, otherwise the passengers and other road users can be endangered due to a lack of attentiveness on the part of the driver.◀

Switching on ignition

1. Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

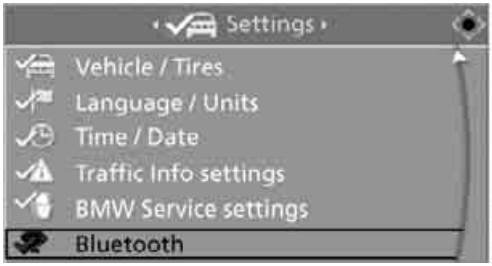
Preparation via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

3. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.

4. Press the controller to open the i menu.
5. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

6. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.

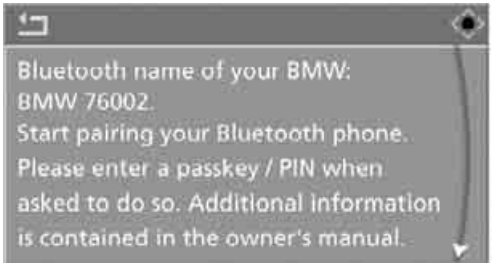


7. Change into the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.

8. Select "Pair new phone" and press the controller.

9. Select "Start pairing" and press the controller.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



Preparation with mobile phone

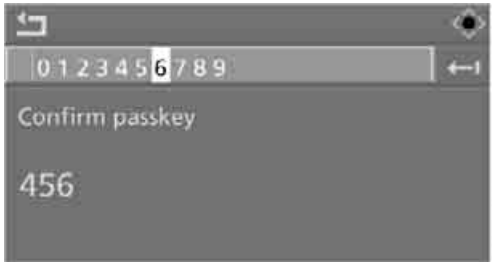
10. Additional operations must be carried out on the mobile phone and differ depending on the model, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone, e.g. find, connect or pair under Bluetooth device. The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is also shown on the mobile phone display.

11. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

Pairing

Depending on your mobile phone, you will first be requested consecutively via the display of your mobile phone or iDrive to enter the Bluetooth passkey you specified.

12. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
    Depending on the mobile phone, approx. 30 seconds are available for entering the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and on the Control Display.



13. Change into the third field from the top, select "Confirm passkey" and press the controller.

14. Wait a few seconds until the "Communication" menu appears.

The next time you use the mobile phone in the vehicle interior, it will be detected within a maximum of 2 minutes with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

▷ With some mobile phone models it may be necessary to make certain settings for a permanent Bluetooth link, e.g. via the menu item Authorization or Secure connection. Refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to your vehicle. This transmission is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

CarManuals2.com

If not all phone book entries are displayed:

- ▷ Transfer all phone book entries from the SIM card to the mobile phone if necessary.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.

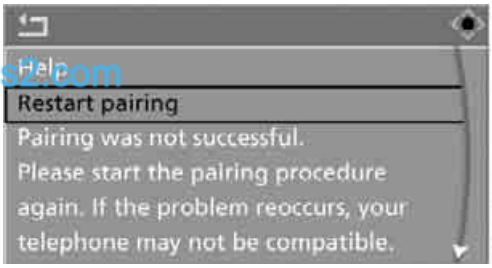
Up to four mobile phones can be paired consecutively. When you pair a fifth mobile phone, the pairing data of the mobile phone for which the pairing data were stored first in the vehicle will be deleted.

Check if pairing is unsuccessful

- ▷ Is the mobile phone supported by the mobile phone preparation package? Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmw.com.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? The same Bluetooth passkey must be entered both on the mobile phone display and via iDrive.
- ▷ Have you required longer than 30 seconds to enter the Bluetooth passkey?
- ▷ Only a limited number of devices can be connected to the mobile phone. Delete the connection to other devices if necessary.
- ▷ The mobile phone no longer reacts? Switch the mobile phone off and then on again or disconnect the power supply.

To repeat pairing:

1. Select "Restart pairing" and press the controller.

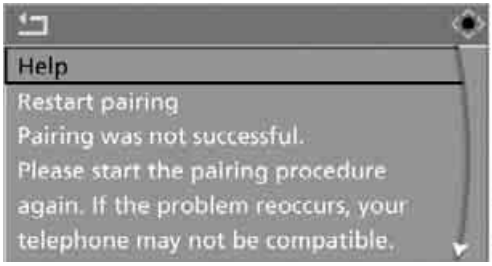


2. Repeat steps 9 to 14.

If pairing was repeatedly unsuccessful, contact BMW Customer Relations.

To call BMW Customer Relations:

Select "Help" and press the controller.



The phone number of BMW Customer Relations and information required for pairing is shown on the display. With mobile phones already paired, you can select the phone number of BMW Customer Relations to establish the connection.

List of paired mobile phones

The mobile phones for which the vehicle has stored the pairing data can be displayed. If several paired mobile phones are detected by the vehicle simultaneously, you can operate the mobile phone highest up in the list via the vehicle.

You can change the order of the mobile phones in the list. As long as a mobile phone is selected in this list, the mobile phones cannot be operated via the vehicle.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Change into the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.
6. Select the desired mobile phone.

   With two drives:

   ▷ Move the controller to the rear to change into the bottom field.

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

   With a single drive:

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

7. Select "Move device up" and press the controller.

   The selected mobile phone is moved upward by one position.

Unpairing mobile phone from vehicle

If you no longer want to operate a mobile phone via the vehicle, you can delete the pairing data of the mobile phone.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Switch off the mobile phone.
2. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
3. Press the controller to open the i menu.
4. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller. "Bluetooth" is selected.
6. Change into the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.
7. Select the desired mobile phone.

   With two drives:

   ▷ Move the controller to the rear to change into the bottom field.

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

   With a single drive:

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

8. Select "Delete device" and press the controller.

The unpaired mobile phone is deleted from the list.
The phone book entries and the lists of stored phone numbers are also deleted.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

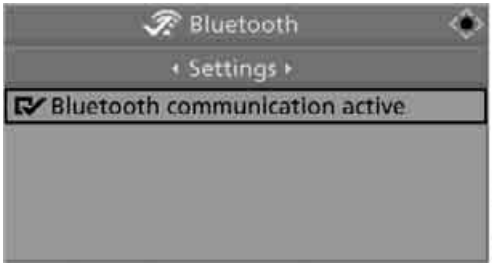
Bluetooth technology is not approved in all countries. Observe the applicable local regulations. Temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone if necessary.
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you cannot operate your mobile phone via the vehicle and the mobile phone can use other devices with a Bluetooth interface, e.g. a laptop computer.◀

To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between your vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. Remove the mobile phone from the cradle and switch it off.
2. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
3. Press the controller to open the i menu.
4. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.

6. Change into the second field from the top, select "Settings" and press the controller.

7. Select "Bluetooth communication active" and press the controller to activate or deactivate the link.



☑ The Bluetooth link is activated.
☐ The Bluetooth link is deactivated.

CarManuals2.com

Adjusting volume

Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

You can also adjust the volume with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions via iDrive:

- ▷ Accepting/rejecting a call
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers from the phone book
- ▷ Dialing stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of accepted calls
- ▷ Ending a call

When the ignition and radio readiness are switched off, e.g. after removing the remote control from the ignition lock, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for no more than 25 minutes.

Speech quality

If the person you are talking to cannot understand you well, this may be due to excessively loud background noises. The full mobile phone preparation package can compensate for these noises to a certain degree. To optimize the speech quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- ▷ Reduce background noises, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing the air volume of the automatic climate control or pointing the opened front vent outlets downward.
- ▷ Reduce the volume of the hands-free system.

CarManuals2.com

Requirements

- ▷ The pairing data of the mobile phone are stored in the vehicle and the mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The mobile phone is detected by the vehicle.

Opening Communication

You operate many of the functions described in the following via the "Communication" menu.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to open "Communication".

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Alternative:

"Accept" is selected.
Press the controller.

Rejecting a call

Select "Reject" and press the controller.
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

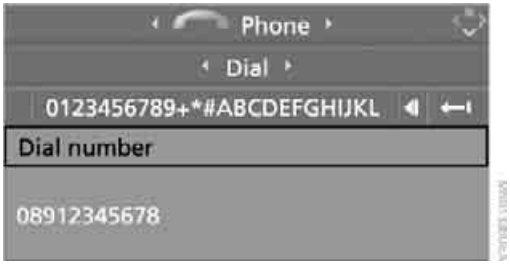
Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

2. Select "Dial" and press the controller.
3. Enter the desired phone number by dialing the individual digits and pressing the controller.
   Always enter the complete phone number consisting of national dialing code, area code, and phone number.
   The letters correspond to the digits on the keypad of the mobile phone.

   To delete the last digit:
   Move the controller toward the right to select the ⟵ arrow and press the controller.
4. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.



   Alternative:
   Press the button on the steering wheel.

For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are calling, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your service provider.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can store phone numbers on and call them up with the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21.

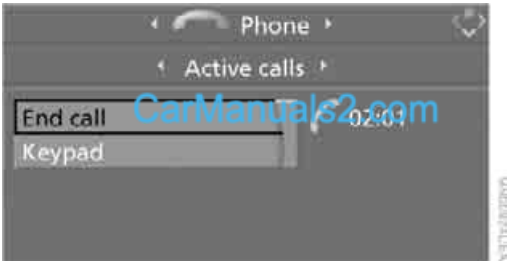
CarManuals2.com

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternative:

1. Select the phone number and press the controller.

2. "End call" is selected:
   Press the controller.



Dialing a phone number from phone book or a phone number stored in a list

Phone numbers you have called, incoming calls and the entries of the phone book are stored in lists when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. If the caller is entered in the phone book, the name of the entry is displayed instead of the phone number.
You can select the desired subscriber from the list and establish the connection.

Five lists are available:

- ▷ "A - Z"
  The entries of the mobile-phone phone book, consisting of the name and phone number, are sorted alphabetically.
- ▷ "Top 8"
  The eight numbers called most frequently from the phone book "A - Z" are automatically stored in the Top 8 list.
- ▷ "Redial"
  The last eight phone numbers you have dialed are automatically stored. The last number dialed is at the top of the list.
- ▷ "Missed calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight calls which were not accepted are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.
- ▷ "Received calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight accepted calls are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.

Dialing phone numbers from phone book

The list "A - Z" is available for you phone book entries. The phone book entries appear on the Control Display.

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. To limit the number of displayed entries, select the first letter of the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

5. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

If different phone numbers are stored in the mobile phone under one name, e.g. office and home, the name is shown once for each phone number.

You can change a phone number stored in the phone book, e.g. to call a specific extension:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select "Add digits" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Change the phone number.
6. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.

Dialing a phone number stored in a list

To select an entry and establish a connection:

CarManuals2.com

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select list and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Top 8"
   - ▷ "Redial"
   - ▷ "Missed calls"
   - ▷ "Received calls"

3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

4. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

Deleting individual entries

1. Select the desired entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete" and press the controller.

The entry is deleted.

Deleting entire list

1. Select an entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete all numbers" and press the controller.

3. If applicable, select "Yes" and press the controller.
   The list is deleted.

BMW Contact*

If you have not enabled BMW Assist, you can have several service numbers displayed:

- ▷ Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group when you require breakdown assistance
- ▷ BMW center, e.g. when you want to make an appointment for service
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations* for information on all aspects of your vehicle

If BMW Assist is enabled, refer to page 191.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

You can dial the displayed service phone numbers if your mobile phone is paired in the vehicle:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. Select "BMW Contact" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Contact Numbers" and press the controller.

5. Select one of the following menu items and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Roadside Assistance"
   - ▷ "Customer Relations"
   - ▷ "Service Request"
6. Select "Call" and press the controller.

Contact is established.

Transferring phone number via tone dialing method

The tone dialing method is required for access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g. remote checking of an answering machine.

This function is available when a connection has been established.

1. Establish connection.

2. With a single drive:
   Press the controller.
   Select "Keypad" and press the controller.
   With two drives:
   Move the controller backwards until the bottom field is selected.
3. Select the desired character and press the controller.
   Each character is sent immediately and confirmed by a tone depending on the mobile phone model.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Changing between mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system*

You can continue calls begun outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle via the hands-free system when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically switches over to the hands-free mode.

For mobile phones that do not automatically switch over to the hands-free mode:

▷ Depending on the mobile phone model used, the conversation can be continued via the hands-free system if necessary. Follow the instructions displayed on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

▷ Press the button above the storage compartment. Switching over may take several seconds.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

When you telephone via the hands-free system, you can also continue the call via the mobile phone if necessary, depending on the mobile phone model. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

As an alternative, you can deactivate the Bluetooth link.

Depending on your mobile phone model, poor reception of the wireless communications network can result in the system switching from the hands-free system to the mobile phone.

Operation by voice*

The concept

You can operate your mobile phone without having to remove your hands from the steering wheel. When making your entries, you will be supported by announcements or questions in many cases.

The same prerequisites as for operation via iDrive apply, refer to page 182.

Voice commands

Activating system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
   An acoustic signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.

Ending/canceling operation by voice

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

›Cancel‹.

CarManuals2.com

In dialogs where text is spoken, not a command, e.g. a name, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.
You can have the possible commands spoken by the system at any point:

›Help‹.

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

The system recognizes digits from zero to nine.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Example: dialing phone numbers

Start the dialog:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

You say	The voice control answers
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on equipment: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹ or ››123 456 7890. And next?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

Setting volume of instructions

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:

Turn the knob during instructions.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting phone number

›Delete‹

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

CarManuals2.com

Voice phone book

Operating by voice requires a personal voice phone book.

- With separate drives for audio CDs and navigation DVDs, the entries are automatically adopted from your mobile phone's memory.
- With a single drive, the entries must be input by voice and are independent of your mobile phone's memory. In this case, it is not possible to use voice command either to call phone numbers stored in the mobile phone or to store new numbers. Up to 50 entries can be input. An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Creating and editing voice phone book*

Save entry:

An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Say the name.
   The spoken length of the names in the phone book must not exceed approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being requested to do so by the system.
4. To store the phone number: ›Save‹.

Delete entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Delete all entries:

›Delete phone book‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phone book‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the repeated prompt with ›Yes‹.

Have entries read aloud and dial:

You can have all the entries of your voice phone book read aloud in the order of input and select a certain entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phone book‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read aloud.

CarManuals2.com

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Redialing

The ›Redial‹ command calls up "Redial".

Notes

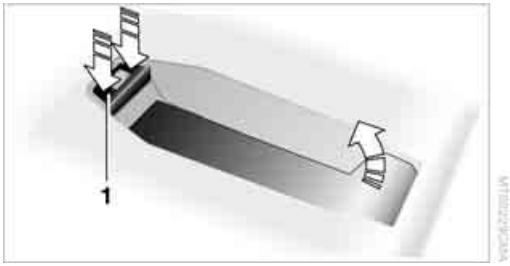
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, keep the following in mind:

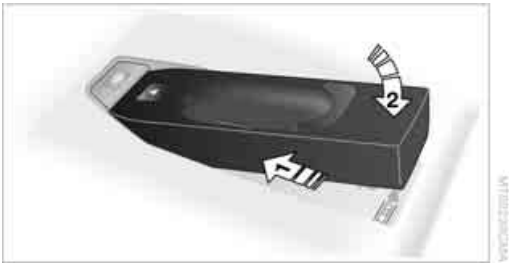
- ▷ Issue the commands smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.
- ▷ Keep the doors and windows closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Mounting/removing snap-in adapter

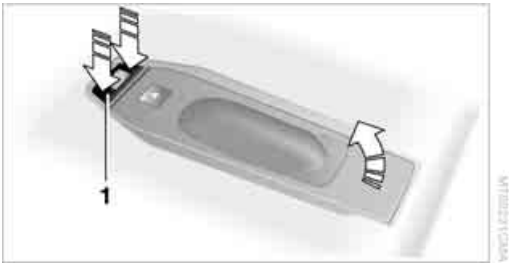
1. Press the area **1** around the button and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front and press down until it engages.

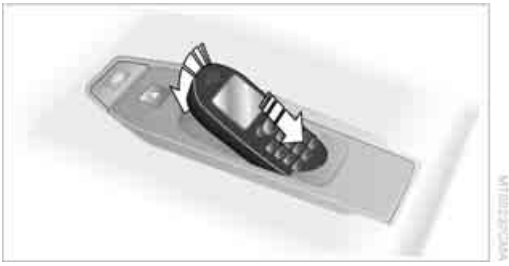


To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press the area **1** around the button.



Inserting mobile phone

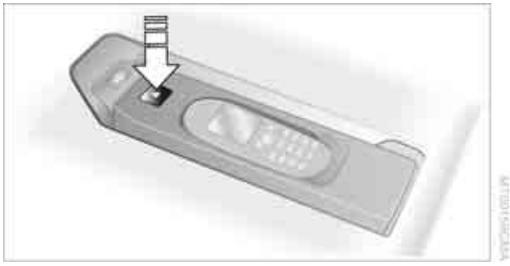
1. Remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector if necessary, so that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.
2. With the buttons facing upward, press the mobile phone toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.



From radio readiness or with the steering unlocked the mobile phone's battery is charged.

▷ To protect the vehicle's batteries, avoid using the phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone



Press button.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides you with various services. For example, the position data of your vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center if an emergency request* has been initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. Following the deactivation of the BMW Assist systems, no BMW Assist service is available. The BMW Assist system be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Requirements

You can use BMW Assist when the following requirements are met:

- ▷ The installed BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- ▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- ▷ In order to activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- ▷ You have subscribed to BMW Assist with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Enabling must have been completed.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated, refer to page 196.

Offered services

The following services are available via BMW Assist:

- ▷ Emergency request, refer to page 224:
  When you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Automatic collision notification:
  Under certain conditions a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center directly following a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Enhanced roadside assistance:
  You can call Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group should you require help in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle and position data are transmitted in the process.
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations:
  For information related to your vehicle, call BMW Customer Relations.
- ▷ TeleService:
  The data on the service status of your vehicle or on required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center either automatically prior to the due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- ▷ Remote door unlock:
  Inform the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. if your remote control is not available and you want to have the vehicle unlocked.
- ▷ Stolen vehicle recovery:
  After your vehicle has been reported to the police as stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can locate its position. To do this, the vehicle electronics must be ready for operation.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

In addition, you can be provided with other services, e.g. the concierge service or information on route planning, traffic conditions, and the weather. With Critical Calling, you can make a limited number of calls via the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. if you do not have your mobile phone with you.
Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center, see below.

You also have access to the BMW Assist concierge service via the Internet.

Characteristics of the offered services

The following characteristics apply to the services:

- ▷ The services offered are country-specific.
- ▷ Voice contact is established or data are transferred, depending on the equipment and the country. In some countries, it is possible to do both.
- ▷ The data transmitted can, for example, be the vehicle data, your current position or the CBS Condition Based Service data.

Using services

Contacting BMW Assist Response Center

You can contact the BMW Assist Response Center via the SOS button.

1. Briefly press protective cover to open.
   With some vehicle equipment packages or in the Convertible, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.

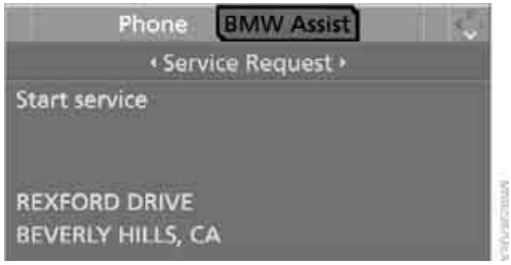
The BMW Assist Response Center is contacted.

Roadside assistance

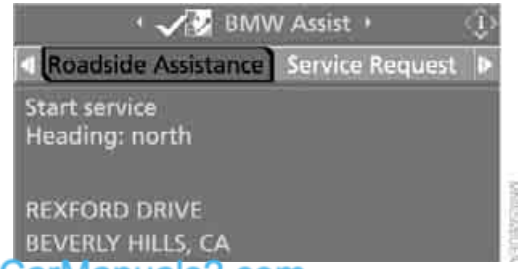
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Roadside Assistance" and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

If the location can be determined, the current vehicle position is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you to the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group.

TeleService

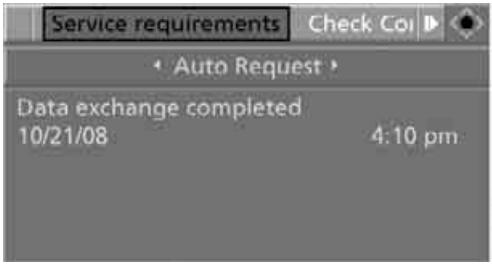
CarManuals2.com

Automatic service notification*

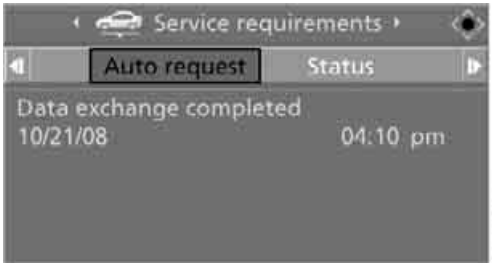
The data on the service status of your vehicle or on required inspections are transmitted automatically prior to the due date. You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



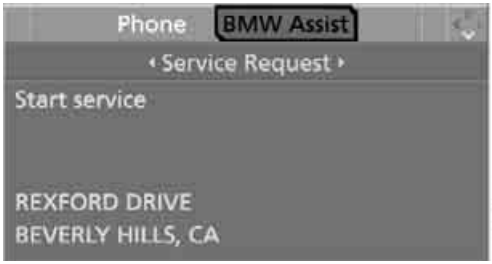
6. Select "Service notification" and press the controller.



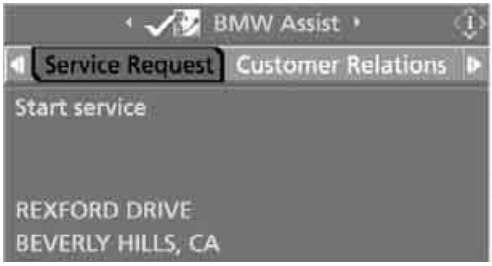
Manual service notification

You can transmit data regarding your vehicle's service status to your BMW center when you wish to arrange a service appointment.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Service Request".



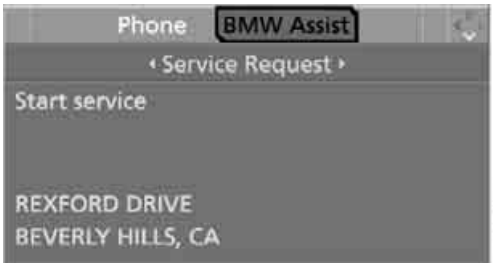
5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The data relevant for service are transmitted. Your BMW center will contact you to set up an appointment for service.

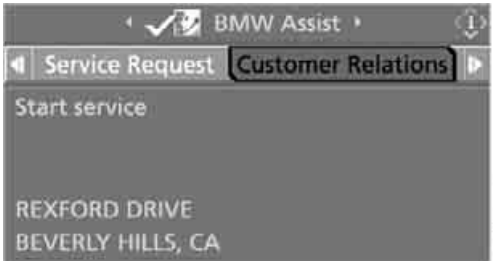
Contacting BMW Customer Relations

For information on all aspects of your vehicle, you can contact BMW Customer Relations.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Customer Relations".



5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

You are connected to the BMW Hotline by the BMW Assist Response Center.

CarManuals2.com

Concierge service*

When you call the concierge service of BMW Assist, you can, for example, obtain information on current events, filling stations or hotels and have their phone numbers and addresses transmitted. Many hotels can be booked directly through the BMW Assist Concierge service.

The concierge service must be enabled separately by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Calling up information

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "Concierge" and press the controller.

5. Select "Start Service" and press the controller.

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you with a BMW Assist Concierge.

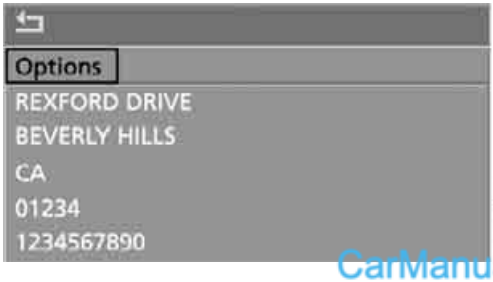
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displaying transmitted data

Select the received message if necessary and press the controller.

Dialing a phone number or transferring an address for destination guidance

1. Select "Options" and press the controller.



2. Select a menu item:

▷ With "Call" you can establish a telephone connection. A prerequisite for this is that your Bluetooth mobile phone has been paired with the vehicle.

▷ Press "Select as destination" to transfer the address to the navigation system for destination guidance.

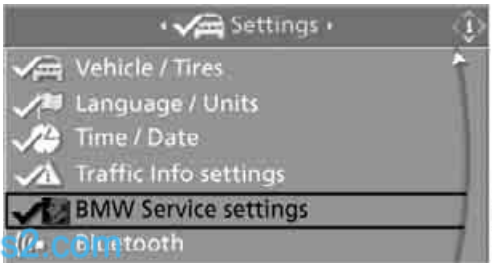
Updating BMW Assist

Displaying and updating services

You will be notified of any changes in the services offered by BMW Assist. In this case, you should update the service functions.

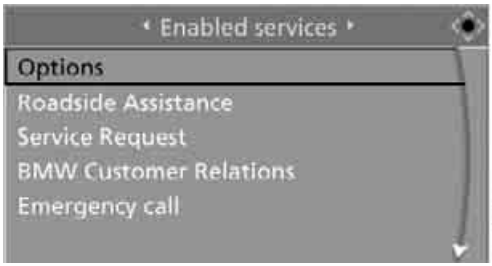
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.
   The currently available BMW Assist services are displayed.
6. If applicable, select "Options" and press the controller.

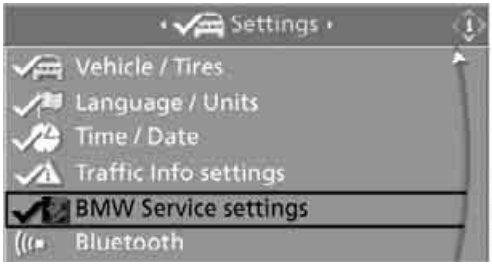


7. Select "Update services" and press the controller.

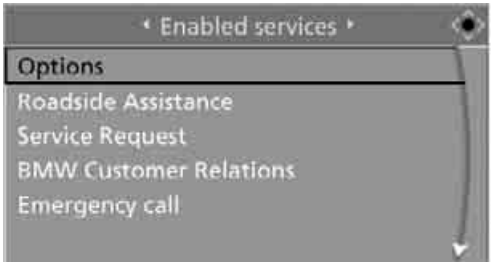
Blocking services*

If you block the services, the connection to BMW Assist is deactivated.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.



7. Select "Terminate services" and press the controller.

The use of BMW Assist is blocked, and the current vehicle position will not be transmitted during an emergency request*. To cancel blocking and reactivate BMW Assist, see below. This does not affect the contractual agreements.

Reactivate BMW Assist if necessary to log on again.

Activating BMW Assist

BMW Assist must be activated to use the services.

Requirements

- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- ▷ Leave radio readiness switched on during the activation process.

Activating

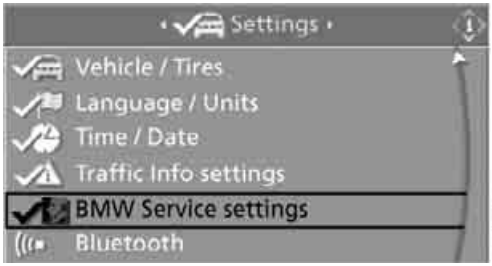
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Enable services" and press the controller.
BMW Assist is activated and the data exchange with the BMW Assist Response Center begins.

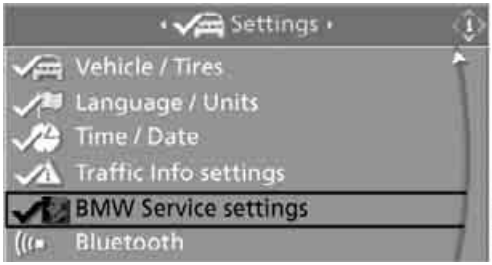
Activation takes a few minutes. The status is displayed on the Control Display. If you open another menu, the activation process continues to run in the background.

Displaying vehicle data

When BMW Assist is activated, the license plate and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle may be displayed.

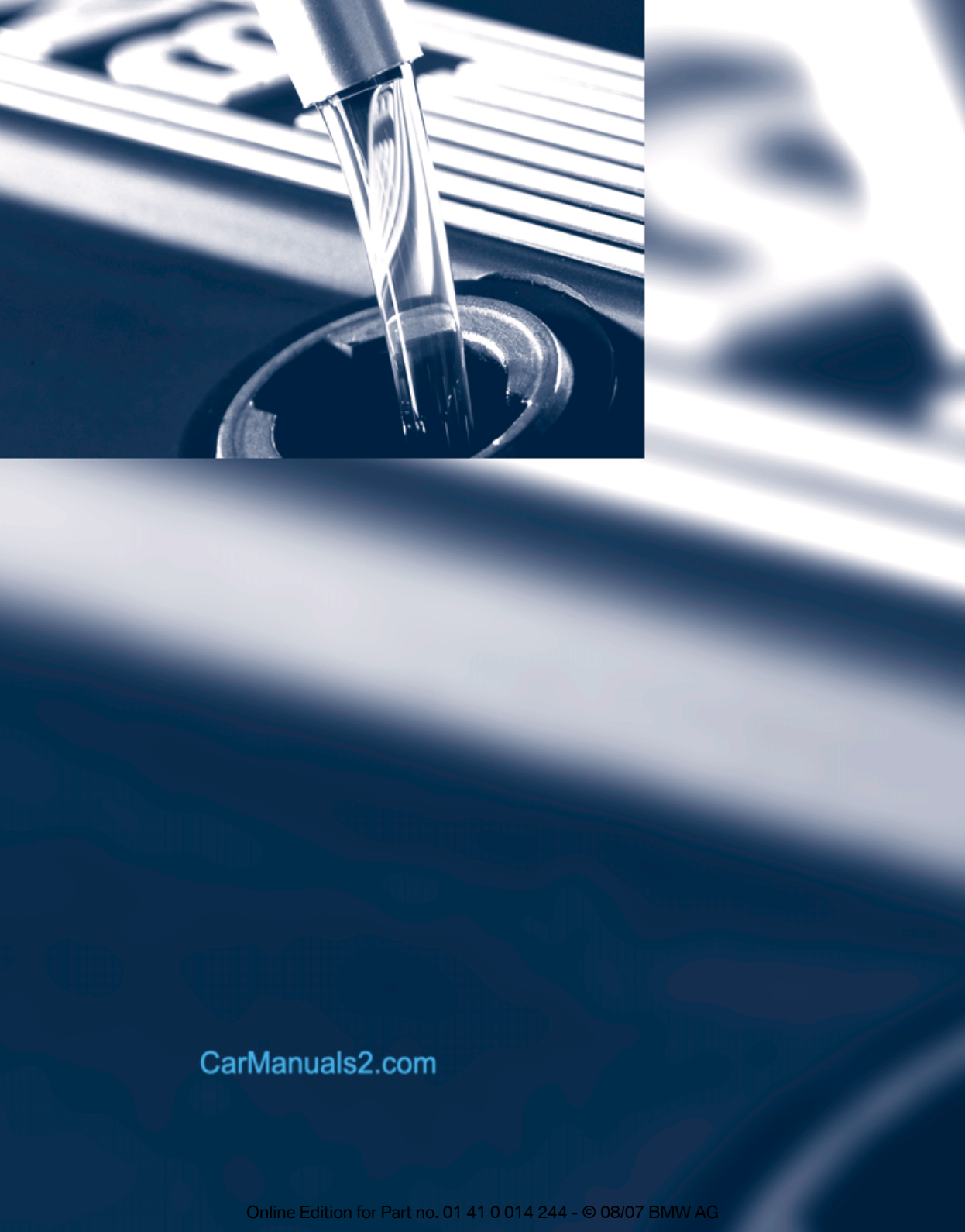
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Profile" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Mobility

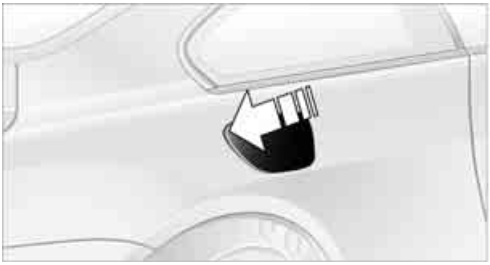
This section helps you maintain your mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and roadside assistance.

Refueling

Switch off the engine before refueling, otherwise no fuel can be filled into the tank and a message is displayed.◀

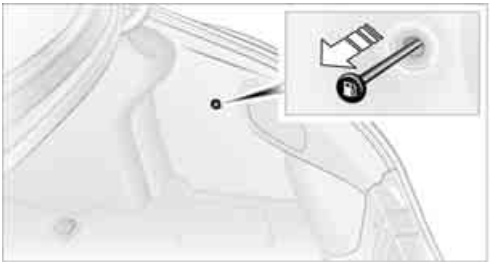
When handling fuel, always observe all applicable precautionary measures and regulations. Never transport reserve fuel containers in the vehicle. They can leak and cause an explosion or a fire in an accident.◀

Fuel filler door



To open and close: briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Unlocking manually

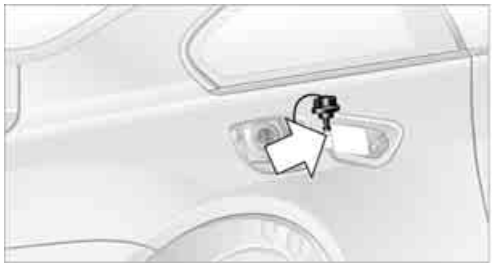


In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can release the fuel filler door manually:

In the luggage compartment, pull the knob with the gas pump symbol on the right side panel.

Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels, follow the safety precautions posted at the filling station. Otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury and property damage.◀



Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler door.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid raising the filler nozzle during refueling, otherwise this

- ▷ results in premature pump shutoff
- ▷ can lead to reduced efficiency in the fuel-vapor recovery system

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 18.5 US gal/70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx.4 US gal/15 liters.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Fuel filler cap

Closing

Insert the cap and turn it clockwise until there is a clearly audible click.

Do not crush the band attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap may not properly seal and fuel vapors can escape.◀

CarManuals2.com

A message* is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Fuel specifications

Never used leaded gasoline; it will permanently damage the catalytic converter.
Do not use E85, i.e. fuel that consists of 85% ethanol, or Flex Fuel. Otherwise permanent damage to the engine and the fuel supply system will result.◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 93

Always use this premium grade fuel to obtain maximum fuel economy and performance.

The minimum approved fuel grade is AKI 91.

Do not use gasoline below the specified minimum quality, otherwise engine damage can result.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has demonstrated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in problems relating to drivability and starting, and to a tendency to stall, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

CarManuals2.com

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Information for your safety

The condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure are crucial not only to the tire's service life, but also to driving comfort and most importantly, driving safety.

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure increases.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct if necessary, including on the spare wheel*: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. Otherwise, driving instability or tire damage, and therefore accidents, can result from incorrect tire inflation pressures.◀

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 86, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 88.◀

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes and tire brands respectively approved and recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressure for your tires, observe the following:

- Tire sizes for your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

CarManuals2.com

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column for traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.

These pressure specifications can be found on the door post when you open the driver's door.

The permissible top speed for these tire inflation pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed; otherwise, tire damage and accidents may result.◀

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please note the tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h listed in the relevant column of the table on the following pages and adjust your tire inflation pressures as needed. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the law could occur.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Tire inflation pressures for M6 Coupe

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	35/240	38/260	35/240	38/260	41/280	46/320
255/40 ZR 19	33/230	-	33/230	-	41/280	-
285/35 ZR 19	-	36/250	-	36/250	-	46/320

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 235.

Tire inflation pressures for M6 Convertible

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	35/240	38/260	35/240	38/260	41/280	46/320
255/40 ZR 19	32/220	-	32/220	-	41/280	-
285/35 ZR 19	-	35/240	-	35/240	-	46/320

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 235.

CarManuals2.com

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

e.g.

285/35 ZR 19
245/45 R 18 100 V

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio in %
Belted construction – radial
Rim diameter in inches
Carrying capacity ID-code
(not in ZR tires)
Speed code letter
(in ZR tires before the R)

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Z = over 150 mph/240 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g.

DOT xxxx xxx 3307

Manufacturer code
for tire make
Tire size and tire design
Tire age

Tire age

The tire's date of manufacture is indicated on the sidewall:
DOT ... 3307 indicates that the tire was manufactured in week 33 of 2007.

BMW recommends replacing all tires at least every 6 years, even if some tires may last for 10 years. This also concerns the tire of the spare wheel*.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.
For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1½, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

Indicates specially reinforced tires.

Tire condition

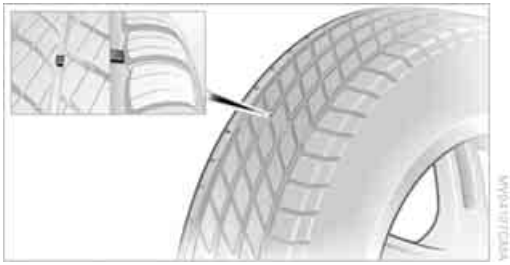
Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and foreign objects lodged in the tread, and check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm, there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.

CarManuals2.com

Winter tires noticeably loose their suitability for winter use below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm. New tires should be mounted in the interest of safety.



Wear indicators at the tread-groove base, refer to arrow, are distributed over the tire's circumference and are marked on the side of the tire with TWI – Tread Wear Indicator. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. These kinds of problems may also be signaled by other changes in vehicle response, such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

In these cases reduce your speed immediately and have the wheels and tires inspected immediately. To do this, carefully drive to the nearest BMW center or a specialized tire dealer that works in accordance with BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel. Have the vehicle towed to the repair shop if necessary. Otherwise, tire damage can be extremely dangerous to vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

New wheels and tires

Only have new wheels and tires mounted by a BMW center or a repair shop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW does not recommend the use of retreaded tires; otherwise, driving safety may be reduced. Potentially substantial variations in the design and the age of the carcasses can result in a reduced service life.◀

The right wheels and tires

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions than the approved units – these differences could lead to body contact, and with it the risk of severe accidents. When selecting the tires, also ensure that they have a sufficient load-carrying capacity. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot be held liable for driving safety.◀

You can find out the right wheel-tire combination from your BMW center.

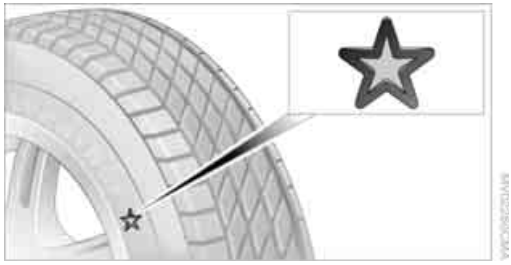
The right wheel-and-tire combination is another vital factor in ensuring reliable operation of various vehicle systems such as ABS and DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. After a tire is damaged, always remember to have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Wheels with electronics for TPM Tire Pressure Monitor

When mounting new tires or converting from summer to winter tires or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor cannot detect a flat tire, refer to page 87. Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on this subject.

Recommended tire brands



BMW recommends particular tire brands for each tire size. You can recognize these from the clearly visible BMW marking on the tire sidewall.

With proper use, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling characteristics.

CarManuals2.com

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Watch speed

Always observe the maximum permissible speed for the winter tires, otherwise tire damage may occur, which can result in accidents.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

After changing wheels/tires

After changing tires or wheels, the slip detection of the Sequential Manual Transmission must become familiar with the changed state.

Reinitialize the system for this purpose:

1. Move the selector lever into the idling position N on a straight stretch of road at a speed between 20 mph/30 km/h and 90 mph/150 km/h.
2. Pull both shift paddles for approx. 2 seconds.

If you do not carry out initialization, the system will automatically learn the changed state gradually during driving. This may be noticeable from the clutch opening and closing briefly.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Rotating wheels between axles

CarManuals2.com

BMW does not recommend moving the front wheels to the rear or vice versa, as otherwise the handling characteristics may be impaired. With tires of different makes and types* such a change is not permissible.

Snow chains*

BMW only tests certain fine-link snow chains, classifies them as road-safe and recommends them. Consult your BMW center for more information.

Use is only permitted in pairs, with winter tires of the size 245/45 R 18 on the rear wheels.

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with the chains mounted.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tensioned. Readjust tension in accordance with the chain manufacturer's specifications if necessary.

▷ Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after installing snow chains as this could cause the Flat Tire Monitor to malfunction.
After mounting or removing snow chains, the slip detection of the Sequential Manual Transmission must become familiar with the altered state. To do this, reinitialize the system, refer to After changing wheels/tires.◀

Under the hood

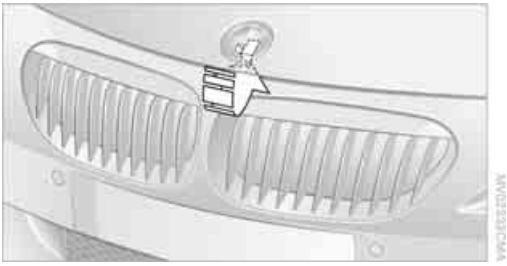
Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training. If you are unfamiliar with the specifications to be observed, only have work carried out on your vehicle by a BMW center or a repair shop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel. Otherwise, there is a danger of damage and associated safety risks if this work is performed improperly.◀

Hood

Releasing

Pull lever.

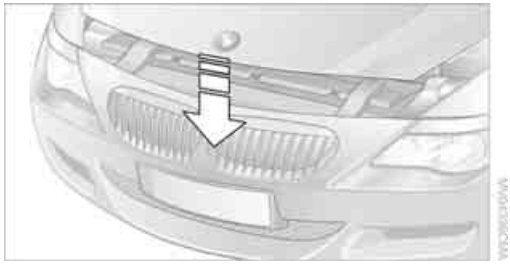
Opening



Press the release handle and open the hood.

You cannot start off with the hood open.◀

Closing



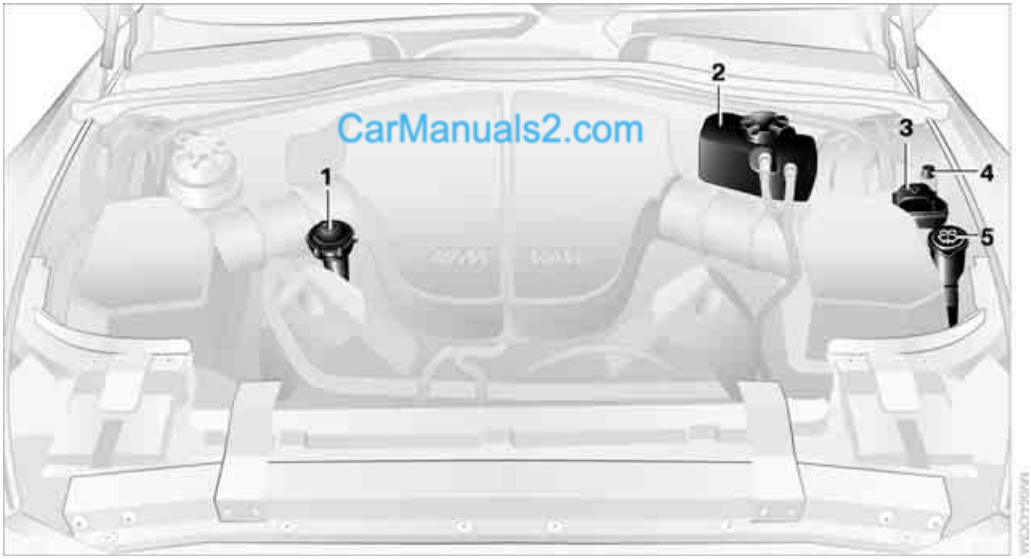
Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while you are driving your vehicle, you should stop at once and close it securely.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Engine compartment



1 Filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil

2 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 213

3 Jump-starting terminal, refer to page 225

4 Body ground/negative terminal

5 Filler neck for washer fluid of the headlamp and windshield cleaning systems, refer to page 67

Engine oil

Engine oil consumption depends on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking engine oil level

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level check.

The oil level can be displayed when the engine is at operating temperature. Constant short-distance driving or a very sporty driving style can make it impossible for a measurement to be taken.

Displays in instrument cluster

You can display the current oil level in the instrument cluster.

1 Oil level

2 Maximum marking

3 Minimum marking

4 BC button

Press the button **4** in the turn signal lever repeatedly until the display for the oil level appears in the instrument cluster.

▷ Manual transmission: the fluid level will be shown in the lower display.◀

The oil level must be between the two marks.

A new measurement is automatically taken after each engine start.

Possible displays

1 Oil level OK

2 Oil level is being determined.
This process can take approx. 1 minute when stopped on a level surface and approx. 5 minutes while driving.
If the engine oil has been topped off, the measurement of the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.

3 Oil level at minimum:
Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer to Adding engine oil below Add at least 0.5 US quart/0.5 liter. Otherwise the oil level control may not display the new value correctly.
If the oil level displayed is below minimum, add engine oil immediately. Failure to do so may lead to engine damage.

4 Oil level is too high

⚠ Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, engine damage may result if too much oil has been added.◀

5 No value can be determined at this time. Engine is not yet at operating temperature.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Fast measurement

In addition to the automatic measurement, you can also determine the current oil level manually, e.g. after adding engine oil, but with a lower degree of measuring accuracy.

1. With the engine at operating temperature, i.e. after at least 6 miles/10 km of uninterrupted driving, park the vehicle in a horizontal position.
2. Allow the engine to run at idle.
3. Press the BC button in the turn signal lever repeatedly until the oil level display is shown in the instrument cluster.
4. Press the BC button for at least 2 seconds. The oil level is determined. A clock symbol is displayed during the measurement.
5. After approx. 1 minute the current oil level is displayed.

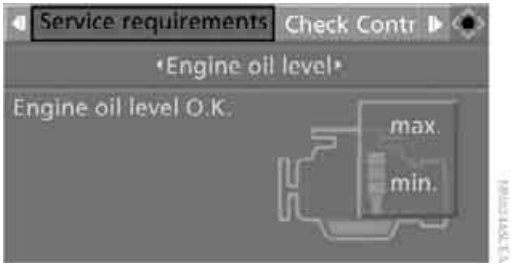
CarManuals2.com

Displaying via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Info sources" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Service" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until "Engine oil level" is selected and press the controller. The oil level is displayed.

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level O.K."

▷ "No measurement available: Updating engine oil level measurement...":
Engine oil level is being measured. This process can take approx. 1 minute when stopped on a level surface with the engine running and approx. 5 minutes while driving.
If the engine oil has been topped off, the measurement of the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.

▷ "Oil level at the minimum! Refill with 1 quart of engine oil.":
Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer to Adding engine oil below. Add at least 0.5 US quart/0.5 liter. Otherwise the oil level control may not display the new value correctly.
If the oil level displayed is below minimum, add engine oil immediately. Failure to do so may lead to engine damage.

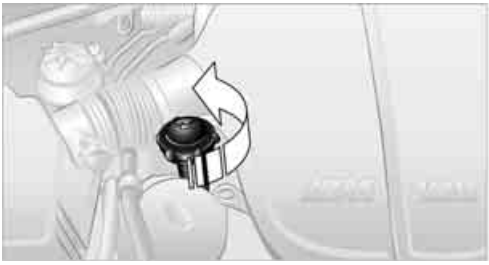
▷ "Engine oil level too high":

⚠ Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, engine damage may result if too much oil has been added.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ "Please observe recalculated service interval for engine oil":
Do not add engine oil. Before continuing to drive, note the recalculated remaining mileage until the next oil change service, refer to Service requirements on page 72. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



Do not add oil until a value slightly above the minimum of 0.0 US quarts/liters is displayed by the oil level measurement. In this area a message is also shown on the Control Display.

⚠ Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged. Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of oil, otherwise the engine may be damaged by adding too much oil.
Add at least 0.5 US quart/0.5 liter of oil, otherwise the oil level check cannot reliably display the current oil level.◀

▷ Please conduct a quick measurement after adding engine oil to check the oil quantity added and to update the display.◀

⚠ Continuous exposure to used oil has caused cancer in laboratory testing. For this reason, thoroughly wash exposed areas of skin with soap and water after such work. Keep oil, grease, etc. out of reach of children and observe warnings on containers. Failure to do so could pose health risks.◀

Oil change

Have oil changes carried out only by a BMW center or a repair shop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel.

CarManuals2.com

Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

⚠ Do not use oil additives; under some circumstances, they can damage your engine.◀

▷ Your BMW center will be happy to answer detailed questions on BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website at www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity grades

The viscosity is a measure of the thickness of the oil and is specified in SAE grades.

▷ Approved oils belong to the SAE grade 10W-60.◀

Alternative oil types

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is unavailable, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils between oil changes. Only use oils with the following specifications:

▷ Viscosity
preferred: SAE 10W-60;
alternative: SAE 10W-40, SAE 5W-50 or SAE 10W-50

▷ Specification
API SJ/CF, API SK/CF or higher

Low temperatures

The oils used by BMW from the factory for your M6 can be used at virtually any ambient temperature. However, if the vehicle is operated for a longer period at temperatures below –4 °F /–20 °C, your BMW center will be happy to recommend a suitable oil.

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Coolant

Do not open the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Coolant is composed of equal parts water and a coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

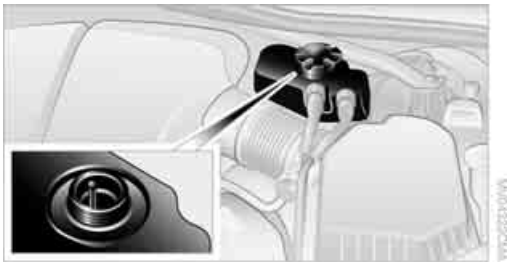
Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. The additives present a health hazard.◀

Always observe all applicable environmental laws and regulations when disposing of used coolant additives.◀

CarManuals2.com

Checking coolant level

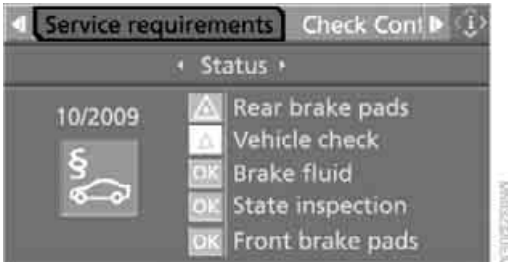
1. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct when the upper end of the float rod is at the same height as the upper edge of the filler neck, also refer to the drawing next to the filler neck.



4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level – do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until it clicks.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System



The BMW Maintenance System supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The service schedule also includes operations related to the vehicle's comfort and convenience features, such as replacement of the filters for the inside air. The ultimate objective is to ensure economical maintenance by providing the ideal service for your vehicle.

Should the day come when you decide to sell your BMW, you will find that a complete dealer service history is an asset of inestimable value.

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

You can set the Control Display to show remaining distances and times of selected maintenance intervals and legally mandated deadlines, refer to page 72:

- Engine oil
- Brake pads, front and rear separately
- Brake fluid
- Vehicle check
- Legally required tests depending on local regulations

Service data in remote control

Your vehicle stores the information required for maintenance continuously in the remote control during driving. After accessing the data stored in the remote control, your BMW Service Advisor can suggest precisely the right array of service procedures for your own individual vehicle. For this reason, when you take your vehicle in for service, you should give the BMW Service Advisor the remote control last used to drive it.

Make sure the date is set correctly, refer to page 79, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.◀

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface

Components which are decisive for the exhaust-gas composition can be checked via the OBD socket with a device.

This socket is located under a cover on the left side of the driver's footwell, directly under the instrument panel.

Exhaust-gas values

The warning lamp lights up. The exhaust-gas values are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction on Canadian models.

CarManuals2.com

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This is a sign of excessive misfiring of the engine. In this case, you should reduce speed and drive to the nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Heavy engine misfiring causes serious damage to the emission-relevant components, especially the catalytic converter, within a short time.

▷ If the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system can detect the escape of fuel vapor. This causes a display to light up. If the cap is then tightened, the display should go out within a few days.◀

Event data recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring and diagnosis modules, or with a device for recording or transmitting certain vehicle data or information. If you have also subscribed to BMW Assist, then certain vehicle data can be transmitted or recorded to enable corresponding services.

Care

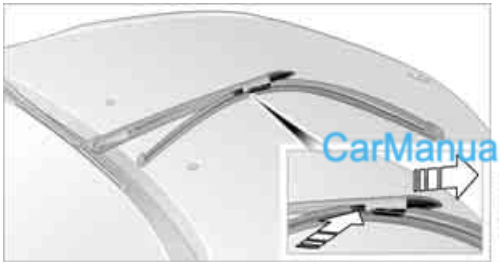
Important information on care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Replacing components

Onboard tool kit

The onboard tool kit is located in the luggage compartment under the floor mat.

Replacing wiper blades



1. Fold the wiper arm out and grasp it firmly.
2. Press the locking tabs together while sliding the wiper blade toward the front to disengage it.
3. Insert the new wiper blade and slide it in until it audibly clicks into place.

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to driving safety. You must be duly diligent in replacing them. If you are not familiar with the specified procedures, have the corresponding work carried out at your BMW center.

Never touch the glass on new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean cloth, napkin, etc., or hold the bulb by its metal socket.◀

A selection of replacement bulbs is available at your BMW center.

Whenever you perform any work on the electrical system, turn off the electrical devices involved to prevent short circuits from occurring. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, follow any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

When performing maintenance on the headlamps, follow the instructions in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

For bulbs for which changing is not described, and for checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.◀

CarManuals2.com

Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours, as irritation of the retina could result.◀

Xenon lamps

The service life of these lamps is very long and the probability of a failure is very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an unusual number of times.

Have work on the xenon lighting system performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Due to the high voltage involved, there is a danger to life and limb when work is carried out improperly.◀

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps

The illustration shows the front left side of the engine compartment.

35-watt bulb, H 8

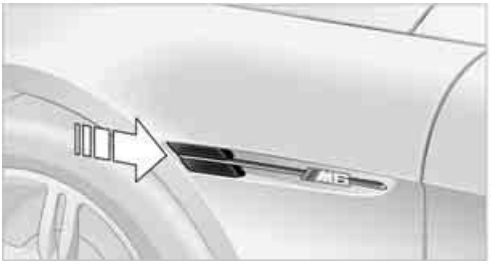
1. Remove the cover cap **1** by pressing the tab and removing the cover cap upward.
2. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Always wear gloves and eye protection – the atmosphere inside the H8 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise, there is a danger of injuries if the bulb is accidentally damaged during replacement.◀

Side-mounted turn signals

5-watt bulb, WY5W

1. Press against the front edge of the lamp with the tip of your finger, then push it to the rear, release the snap connection at the front and take it off the trim strip.

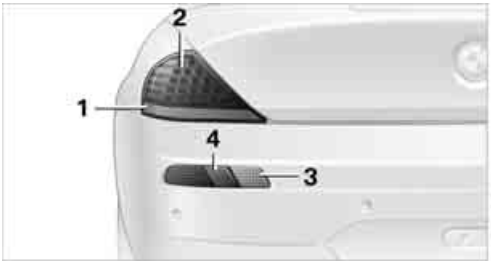


2. Turn the bulb holder to the left by 90° and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Tail lamps

CarManuals2.com

The parking lamps, tail lamps, brake lamps, and turn signals use LED technology. The backup lamps are equipped with long-life bulbs. Please contact a BMW center in case of a malfunction.◀



1 Turn signals
2 Roadside parking, tail and brake lamp
3 Reflector
4 Backup lamp

License plate lamps

5-watt bulb, W5W

1. Push a screwdriver from the left under the lamp and pry out the lamp toward the right.
2. Turn the bulb holder to the left by 90° and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Repairing flat tire with M Mobility System

To repair a flat tire, an M Mobility System is provided in the BMW M6. Using this system you can apply a sealant in the inside of the tire, seal off the damaged area, restore the tire inflation pressure and then continue driving.

Safety measures in case of a breakdown: Park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers.
Apply the handbrake and shift into first gear or reverse with the manual transmission, or move the selector lever into a drive position with the sequential transmission. Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp* is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.◀

Preparation

The M Mobility System is located in the luggage compartment under the floor panel flap.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated the tire if possible.

Corresponding information on using the M Mobility System are also provided on the device.◀

Before using the M Mobility System, observe the information on the sealant bottle.◀

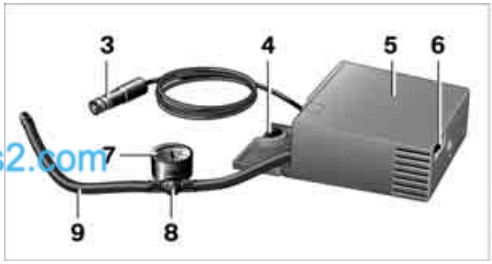
Pull the sticker for the speed limit off the sealant bottle and apply it to the steering wheel.

Please observe the best-by date on the sealant bottle.◀

The M Mobility System consists of

1 Sealant bottle and sticker with speed limit
2 Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel

Model with pressure gauge on hose*



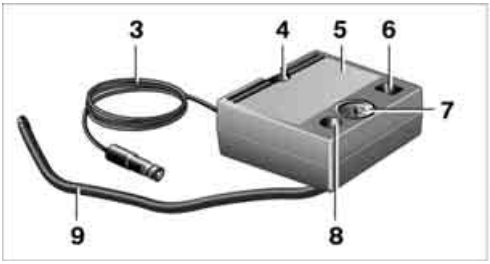
3 Connector and cable for lighter socket
4 Mounting for sealing bottle
5 Compressor
6 On/Off switch
7 Pressure gauge for indicating tire inflation pressure
8 Screw on pressure gauge for reducing tire inflation pressure
9 Connecting hose for connecting compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connector, cable and connecting hose are stored in the compressor housing.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Model with pressure gauge integrated in housing*



3 Connector and cable for lighter socket

4 Mounting for sealing bottle

5 Compressor

6 On/Off switch

7 Pressure gauge for indicating tire inflation pressure

8 Button for reducing tire inflation pressure

9 Connecting hose for connecting compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connector, cable and connecting hose are stored on underside of compressor.

Using M Mobility System

To repair a flat tire with the M Mobility System, proceed as follows:

▷ Fill sealant into wheel, refer to page 219.

▷ Distribute sealant, refer to page 219.

▷ Produce tire inflation pressure, refer to page 219.

Filling sealant into wheel

⚠ Strictly comply with the specified order, otherwise highly pressurized sealant could escape.◀

1. Shake sealant bottle.
2. Screw hose **9** onto connection of sealant bottle.
3. For model with pressure gauge on hose: Make sure that screw **8** on pressure gauge is closed.
4. Screw dust cap off valve of defective wheel and screw filling hose **2** of sealant bottle onto valve.
5. Insert sealant bottle on compressor housing so that it is positioned upright.

6. Make sure that device is switched off, position 0.
7. Insert connector **3** into lighter socket in vehicle interior, refer to page 112.
8. With the ignition switched on, refer to page 59:
   Switch on the device and allow to run for approx. 3 minutes to fill wheel with sealant. It is not important what inflation pressure the tire has after filling.
9. Switch off device.
10. Remove connecting hose from connection of sealant bottle and tire valve.
    Stow the M Mobility System in the vehicle again.

Distributing sealant

Immediately drive approx. 2 miles/3 km so that sealant is evenly distributed in tire.

▷ Do not exceed a maximum speed of 35 mph/60 km/h. Do not drop below 12 mph/20 km/h if possible.◀

Producing tire inflation pressure

1. After approx. 2 miles/3 km, stop at suitable location.
2. Screw compressor hose **9** directly onto tire valve.
3. Insert connector **3** in lighter socket in vehicle interior.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Correct tire inflation pressure to 29 psi/ 200 kPa. With the ignition switched on:
   - ▷ Increase inflation pressure: switch on device, position I. To check currently set inflation pressure, briefly switch off device.

   ⚠ Do not allow compressor to run longer than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.◀

   - ▷ Reduce inflation pressure: press button **8** or turn screw **8** on pressure gauge.

▷ If the inflation pressure is not held, drive the vehicle again, refer to Distributing sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4 once.
Using the M Mobility System can be ineffective with tire damage from a size of approx. 0.16 in/ 4 mm. Please contact the nearest BMW center, refer to page 225, or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel if the tire cannot be made ready for driving with the M Mobility System.◀

⚠ The tire inflation pressure must be at least 29 psi/200 kPa. Otherwise, do not continue driving.◀

Continue driving

⚠ Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h, otherwise accidents can occur.◀

▷ Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
For details, refer to page 86.
Have the defective tire and the sealant bottle of the M Mobility System replaced as soon as possible.◀

Changing wheels*

⚠ Safety precautions in the event of a flat tire or wheel change: park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers. Apply the handbrake and shift into first gear or reverse with the manual transmission, or move the selector lever into a drive position with the sequential transmission.
Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp* is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.
Change the wheel only on a level, firm surface which is not slippery. The vehicle or the jack could slip to the side if you attempt to raise the vehicle on a soft or slippery surface such as snow, ice, tiles, etc.
Position the jack on a firm support surface.
Do not use a wooden block or similar object as a support base for the jack, as this would prevent it from extending to its full support height and reduce its load-carrying capacity.
To avoid serious or fatal injury: never lie under the vehicle, and never start the engine while it is supported by the jack.◀

What you will need

CarManuals2.com

To avoid rattling noises later on, note the positions of the tools before removing them, then return them to their initial positions after completing work.

1 Chock*
2 Vehicle jack*
3 Lug wrench*

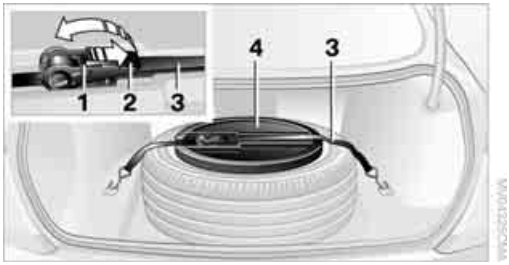
The tools are located in the hollow of the spare wheel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Spare wheel*

1. Fold up the convertible top compartment floor, refer to Convertible: increasing luggage compartment capacity, page 35.
2. Pull back lock **1**, fold open tensioning lock **2** completely and loosen the belt **3**.

CarManuals2.com

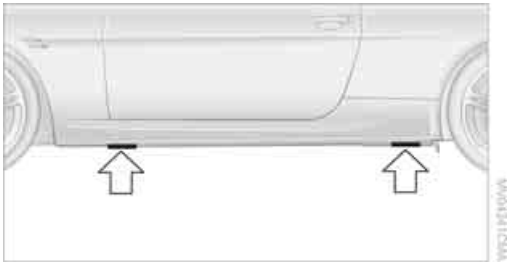


3. Remove the cover **4**.
4. Take the tool mounting out of the spare wheel.
5. Remove the spare wheel.

Preparing wheel change

1. Observe the safety precautions above.
2. Prevent the vehicle from rolling:
   Place the chock behind the front wheel on the other side of the vehicle, or on inclines, in front of this wheel. On steeply inclined roads, always secure the vehicle against rolling.
3. Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking up vehicle



The jacking points for the car jack are located in the positions shown.

1. Position the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel so that the entire surface of the jack base rests on the ground perpendicularly beneath the jacking point.

   ⚠ The vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels only. Do not attempt to raise another vehicle model with it or to raise any load of any kind. To do so could cause accidents and personal injury.◀
2. Guide the jack head into the rectangular recess of the jacking point when cranking up, refer to illustration detail.

3. Jack the vehicle up until the wheel you are changing is raised from the ground.

Mounting a wheel

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Remove accumulations of mud or dirt from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub. Also clean the lug bolts.
3. Position the new wheel or spare wheel. Secure the wheel by screwing at least two lug bolts into opposite bolt holes.
   When you mount wheels other than Genuine BMW light-alloy wheels, different lug bolts may also be required.
4. Screw in the remaining lug bolts. Tighten all the bolts securely in a diagonal pattern.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack from beneath the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

After mounting

1. Tighten the lug bolts in a diagonal pattern.

   To ensure safety, always have the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench as soon as possible to ensure that they are tightened to the specified torque. Otherwise, incorrectly tightened lug bolts are a hidden safety risk. The tightening torque is 88.5 lb ft/120 Nm.◀

2. Check and correct the tire inflation pressure at the earliest opportunity.

   Protect valve stems with valve stem seal caps against dirt and contamination. Dirt in valve stems is a frequent source of gradual air loss.◀

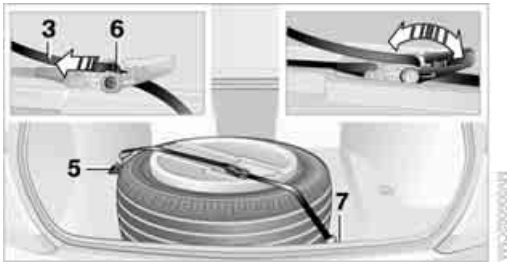
3. Initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 86, and the Sequential Manual Transmission, refer to After changing wheels/tires on page 207.
4. Replace the damaged tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire balanced.

Stowing wheel and tools

Convertible: a rear wheel can only be transported with the convertible top compartment floor folded up.◀

1. Lay the wheel in the tool mounting.
2. Lay the cover on the mounting.
3. Coupe: center the wheel and cover relative to the lashing eyes **5**.
   Convertible: slide the wheel as far as possible to the left and to the rear.
4. Coupe: hook the belt into the lashing eyes **5** and lay it in the belt guide which runs in the center of the lid.

Convertible: hook the belt into the lashing eyes **5** and **7** and lay it in the belt guide of the lid which runs offset.



5. Completely open the tensioning lock.
6. Thread the belt **3** through the axis **6** of the tensioning lock without twisting it and tension it by hand.
7. Tighten the belt firmly with the tensioning lock by opening and closing the lock several times.
8. Fold the tensioning lock closed and stow the protruding belt end.

Driving with spare wheel

With certain wheel-and-tire combinations the size of the spare wheel differs from that of the other wheels. The spare wheel is equivalent to them in all load and speed ranges. However, to restore the original state, the normal wheel should be remounted as soon as possible.◀

CarManuals2.com

Vehicle battery

Maintenance

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate.
Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Charging battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine switched off. For the connections, refer to Jump starting on page 225.

Disposal

CarManuals2.com

After replacement, have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or deposit them at a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always secure the battery to prevent it from tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

After a temporary power supply interruption, some settings are lost. Take the following steps:

- ▷ Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory
  Store the positions again, refer to page 47.
- ▷ Time and date
  Reset, refer to text starting on page 77.
- ▷ Radio
  Store stations again, refer to page 156.
- ▷ Navigation system
  Wait until the system starts, refer to page 124.

Fuses

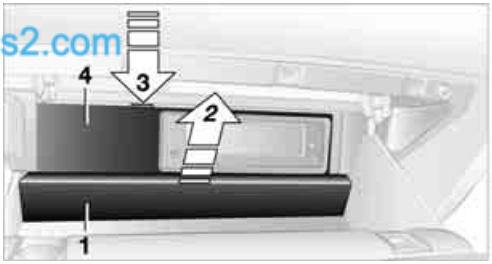
Never attempt to repair a blown fuse, and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, as this could lead to overloading of the wiring, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀

Spare fuses and a pair of plastic tweezers are located in the compartment for the onboard tool kit, refer to page 216.

Information on fuse allocation is located below the bracket for the onboard tool kit, see below.

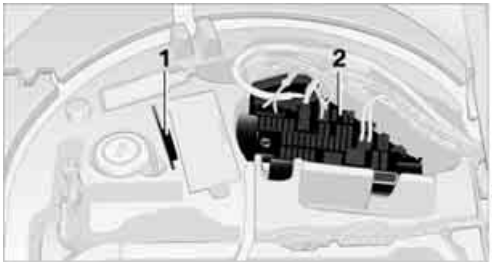
In glove compartment

1. Press the button on the back in the center of partition **1** and pull out the partition upward, arrow **2**.



2. Press the coupling downward, arrow **3**, and fold the lid **4** forward.

In luggage compartment



Fold the cover under the floor mat upward and remove the bracket for the onboard tool kit. Information on fuse allocation **1** and additional fuses **2** are provided there.

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency request

Conditions for an emergency request:

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Full preparation package mobile phone. With this equipment, an emergency request is still possible when no mobile phone is paired in the vehicle.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated. Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 196.
- ▷ Radio readiness is activated.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network.
- ▷ The emergency request system is operable.

Once your service contract for BMW Assist expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. Following deactivation of the BMW Assist system, no emergency requests can be made. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated after concluding a new agreement at a BMW center.

Initiating an emergency request

1. Briefly press protective cover to open. With some vehicle equipment packages or in the Convertible, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

The LED in the button lights up. As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

When the emergency request is received at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and arranges for additional steps to help you.

If conditions allow, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

If the current position of your vehicle can be determined, it will be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. You may still be heard by the BMW Assist Response Center, however.

Under certain conditions, an emergency request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. The automatic collision notification is not affected by the button being pressed.

For technical reasons, the emergency request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

▷ You can also use other services of BMW Assist with this button, refer to page 191.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is located on the left-hand side in the luggage compartment.

First-aid kit*

The first-aid kit is located in the filler element of the rear seat backrest.

1. Press the button downward and pull the filler element forward.

2. Take out first-aid kit.

To refit the filler element, insert the two bottom tabs into the strip and press the filler element back into place. Make sure that you do not damage the rear seat upholstery.◀

Some of the articles contained in the first-aid kit have a limited service life. For this reason, check the expiration dates of each of the items regularly and replace any whose expiration dates have passed.

Roadside Assistance*

BMW Roadside Assistance offers you assistance in the event of a breakdown around the clock, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of the Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the BMW Contact directory.

With BMW Assist you can contact the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group for assistance in the event of a breakdown directly via iDrive, refer to page 192.

Jump starting

When your battery is discharged, you can use two jumper cables to start your BMW with power from the battery in a second vehicle. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Use only jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparing

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Switch off any electrical systems and components in both vehicles.

CarManuals2.com

There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is a danger of short circuiting.◀

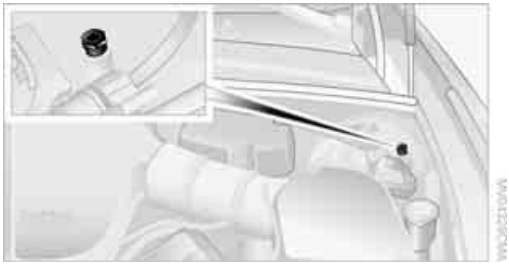
Connecting jumper cables

To avoid personal injury from sparks, follow this sequence when connecting jumper cables.◀

In your BMW M6, the so-called jump-starting terminal for jump starting in the engine compartment serves as a positive terminal for the battery, also refer to engine compartment overview on page 209. The cover cap is marked with a +.

1. Fold open the cover of the BMW jump-starting terminal. To do so, pull the tab.

2. Attach one end of the jumper cable plus/+ to the positive terminal of the battery or a jump-starting terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a jump-starting terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one end of the jumper cable minus/– to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the vehicle providing assistance.
   Your BMW M6 has a special nut as body ground or negative terminal.



5. Attach the second end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting engine

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and allow it to run at idle for several minutes at slightly increased speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the connection sequence.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting and towing

Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using tow fitting

The threaded tow fitting is stored in the tool kit mounted on the inside of the luggage compartment under the floor mat, refer to page 216, and should always remain in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

CarManuals2.com

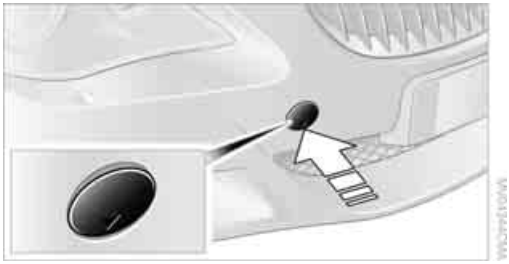
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Only use the tow fitting that comes with the vehicle and screw it in as far as possible. Use the tow fitting for towing only on roads. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise, the tow fitting and vehicle can be damaged.◀

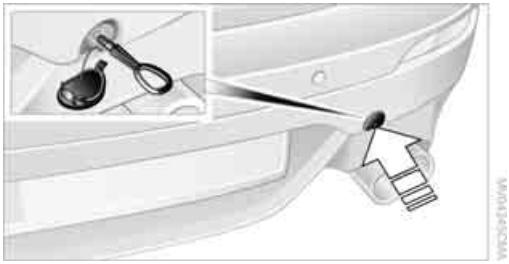
CarManuals2.com

Access to screw thread

Front: press the arrow symbol on the cover in the bumper.



Rear: press the arrow symbol on the cover while prying out the cover upward by hand.



Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 59; otherwise, the low-beam headlamps, tail lights, turn signals and windshield wipers would not be available. Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, as otherwise the steering can turn to the left or right. When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. This then requires increased effort for braking and steering.◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers depending on the local regulations. If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle to be towed, e.g. with a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

Make sure that selector lever position N is engaged with the ignition switched on, as otherwise the engine can be damaged during towing.◀

Towing methods

Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◀

In some countries, towing with tow bars or ropes in public traffic is not permitted. Familiarize yourself with the regulations on towing in the respective country.

With tow bar

The towing vehicle may not be lighter than the vehicle to be towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to reliably control vehicle response.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please note the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be strictly limited during cornering.
- ▷ When mounted at an angle, the tow bar will exert lateral forces, tending to push the vehicle sideways.

Attach the tow bar to the tow fittings only, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Attach tow ropes to the tow fittings only, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

With tow truck

Do not tow the vehicle with only the front or rear axle raised, as otherwise the engine may be damaged or the steering can turn to the left or right.◀

Have the vehicle transported on a flatbed surface only.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle if possible, but instead start the engine by means of jump starting, refer to page 225. Vehicles equipped with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started when the engine is cold.

Manual transmission

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 59.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Tow-start with the clutch completely depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch again completely.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 59.
3. Tow-start in selector lever position N.
4. Move the selector lever into the drive position and pull toward + within 2 seconds. The correct gear will be selected and engaged automatically.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Reference

This chapter contains the technical data, the short commands of the voice command system, and the index that will direct you as quickly as possible to the information you are looking for.

CarManuals2.com

Technical data

Engine data

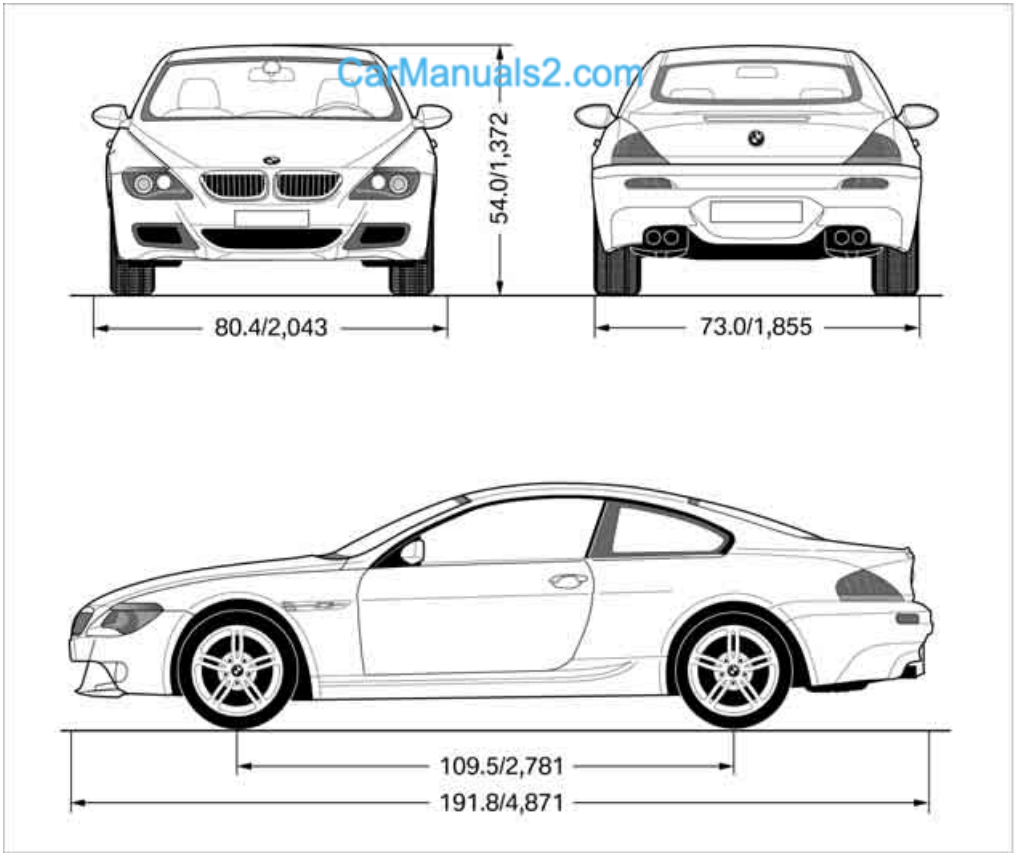
CarManuals2.com

		M6
Displacement	cu in/cm³	305.1/4,999
No. of cylinders		10
Maximum output	hp	500
at engine speed	rpm	7,750
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	383/520
at engine speed	rpm	6,100

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Dimensions

Coupe

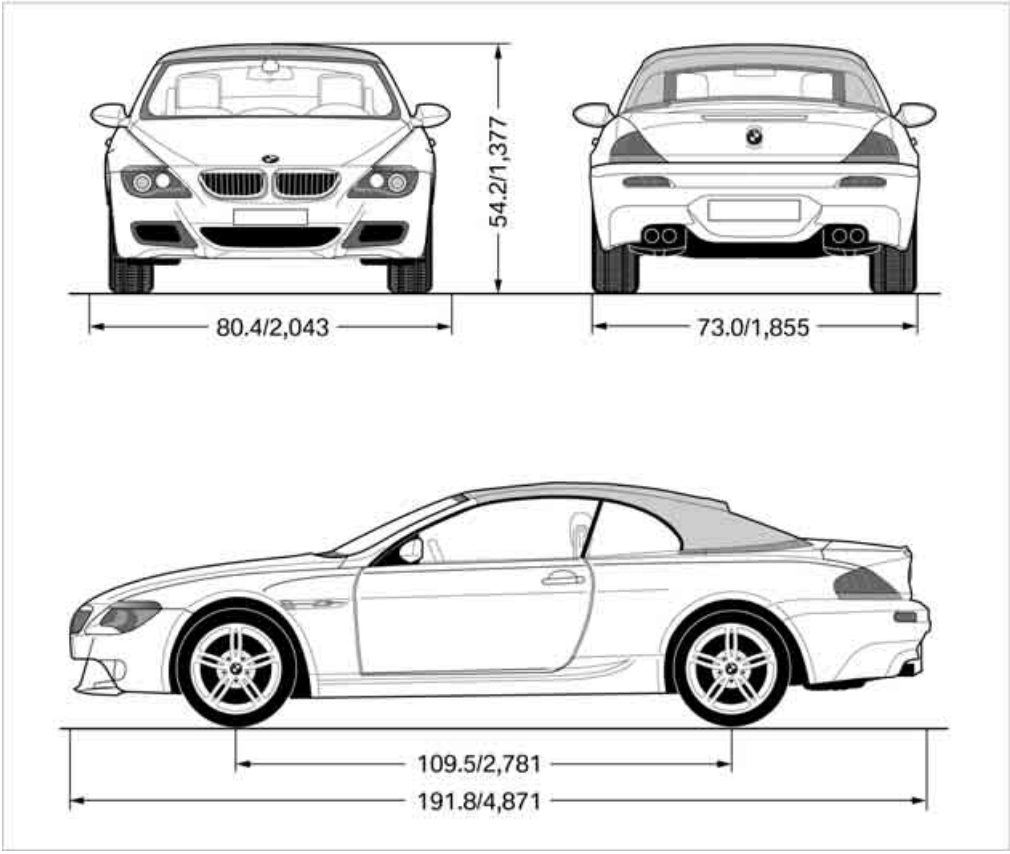


All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 41.0 ft/12.5 m

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Convertible



All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 41 ft/12.5 m

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Weights

		M6 Coupe	M6 Convertible
Curb weight	lbs./kg	3,909/1,773	4,398/1,995
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs./kg	4,850/2,200	5,247/2,380
Load	lbs./kg	941/427	849/385
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,403/1,090	2,469/1,120
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,646/1,200	2,844/1,290
Luggage compartment capacity	cu ft/l	15.9/450	10.6/300
▷ with raised convertible top compartment floor, refer to page 35	cu ft/l	–	12.4/350

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 18.5/70	Fuel specification: page 201
including reserve of:	US gal/liters	approx. 4/15	
Window and headlamp wiper system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	For details: page 67

CarManuals2.com

Short commands of voice command system*

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected.

Here are the important short commands for the voice command system.

Assistance window

Function	Command
To open the assistance window 20	›Assistance window‹
To select the display in the assistance window 20	›Assistance window map facing north‹, ›Assistance window map direction of travel‹, ›Assistance window arrow display‹, ›Assistance window perspective‹, ›Assistance window current position‹, ›Assistance window trip computer‹ or ›Assistance window onboard info‹
To change scale in assistance window 124	›Assistance window scale ... feet‹ or ›Assistance window scale ... miles‹

Communication

Function	Command
To activate telephone 183	›Phone‹
To dial phone number 183	›Dial number‹
To display the phone book 184	›A to Z‹
To dial from phone book 184	›Call ...‹ or ›Dial name‹
To display "Top 8" 185	›Top 8‹
To redial 185	›Redial‹
To display "Received calls" 185	›Received calls‹
To display "Missed calls" 185	›Missed calls‹
To display "Bluetooth" 177	›Bluetooth‹
To open BMW Assist 191	›BMW Assist‹
To open BMW Service, Services 191	›BMW Service‹
To open "BMW Contact" 185	›BMW Contact‹
To open "BMW Contact Numbers" 193	›BMW Contact numbers‹
To open "Roadside Assistance" 192	›Roadside Assistance‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Navigation

Function	Command
To open navigation 124	›Navigation‹
To open "Enter address"	›Enter address‹
To open "New destination"	›New destination‹
To display "Input map"	›Input map‹
To display destination list	›Destination list‹
To display the address book	›Address book‹
To display the route criteria	›Route preference‹
To start destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
To end destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
To display arrow display	›Arrow display‹
To display map view	›Map‹, ›Map facing north‹, ›Map direction of travel‹ or ›Perspective‹
To change scale	›Scale ... miles‹ or ›Scale ... feet‹
To display streets and towns/cities of the route	›Route list‹
To switch on voice instructions	›Navigation info on‹
To switch off voice instructions	›Navigation info off‹
To repeat voice instructions	›Repeat navigation info‹
To open route	›Route menu‹
To display current position	›Current position‹

CarManuals2.com

Onboard info

Function	Command
To open "Car Data" 71	›Car data‹
To display the computer 71	›Onboard info‹
To display the trip computer 72	›Trip computer‹
To start the stopwatch 77	›Stopwatch‹
To set the speed limit 76	›Limit‹
To activate speed limit 77	›Limit on‹
To deactivate speed limit 77	›Limit off‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Entertainment

Function	Command
Tone control 151	›Audio‹
To switch on radio 154	›Radio on‹, ›FM‹ or ›AM‹
To open "FM" 154	›FM menu‹
To open "AM" 154	›AM menu‹
To open "All stations" 154	›FM All stations‹
To select the radio station 154	›Station ...‹, e.g. ›Station WNYC‹, or ›Choose station‹
To open "Presets" 154	›FM presets‹ or ›AM presets‹
To select preset radio station 154	›Preset ...‹, e.g. ›Preset 1‹
To open "Manual" 155	›FM manual‹, ›AM manual‹ or ›Choose frequency‹, ›Frequency ... Megahertz‹
To open the radio station with the best reception 156	›AM Autostore‹
To open "WB" 158	›Weatherband menu‹
To switch on weatherband 158	›Weatherband on‹
To select a weatherband station 158	›Choose weatherband station‹
To open "SAT" 162	›SAT radio menu‹
To switch on satellite radio 162	›SAT radio‹
To open "Presets" of satellite radio 163	›SAT radio presets‹
To open "All channels" of satellite radio 162	›SAT radio all channels‹
To open "Categories" of satellite radio 162	›SAT radio categories‹
To select CD player 164	›CD menu‹
To switch on CD player 164	›CD‹
To select CD changer 165	›CD changer menu‹
To switch on CD changer 165	›CD changer‹
To select a CD in the CD changer 165	›CD 1...6‹
To select music track 165	›CD track ...‹
To select a CD and music track in the CD changer 165	›CD 1...6 track ...‹
To switch on audio playback with external audio device 170	›Audio Aux‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Climate

Function	Command
To open "Vent settings" 103	›Vent settings‹
To open "Automatic programs" 102	›Automatic programs‹
To open "Parked car ventilation" 106	›Parked car operation‹
To open "Automatic ventilation" 106	›Automatic ventilation‹
To display the activation times 106	›Activation time‹

CarManuals2.com

i menu

Function	Command
To open the i menu	›Settings menu‹
"Display off" 21	›Display off‹
To open "Info sources"	›Info sources‹
To open "Settings"	›Settings‹
To open "Door locks" 30, 32	›Door locks‹
To open "Steering wheel buttons" 53	›Steering wheel buttons‹
To open MDrive* 53	›MDrive‹
To open "Lighting" 65, 97	›Lighting‹
To open "Service requirements" 73, 193	›Service requirements‹
To open "Service" 73, 193	›Service‹
To open "BMW Service settings" settings 195	›BMW service settings‹
To display "Check Control messages" 74	›Check Control messages‹
To open "Head-Up Display" 93	›Head-up display‹
To adjust the brightness of the Control Display 79	›Brightness‹
To open "Units" 79	›Units‹
To open "Languages" 80, 124	›Language‹
To open "Time" 78	›Time‹
To open "Date" 79	›Date‹
To open "PDC" 82	›PDC‹
To open "FTM" 86	›FTM‹
To open "TPM" 88	›TPM‹
To display "Bluetooth" 177	›Bluetooth‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Everything from A to Z

Index

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions, and indicates where to find them in the text.

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 82
– indicator lamp 84
Accepted calls 184
Accessories 6
Accident, refer to Emergency request 224
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 105
Activating hour signal 78
"Activation time" for parked-car ventilation 106
Active front head restraints 48
Adapter for spare key 28
Adaptive brake lamps, refer to Brake force display 90
Adaptive Head Light 98
"Add digits" for mobile phone 184
Additives
– coolant 213
– engine oil, refer to Approved engine oils 212
"Address book" for navigation system 134
Address for navigation
– deleting 135
– entering 126, 129
– selecting 134
– storing 134
– storing current position 134
"Add to address book" 133
"Add to destination list" 129, 131
Adjusting interior temperature 102
Adjusting thigh support 46
Adjusting tone in audio mode, refer to Tone control 151
"After door opened" 48
"After unlocking" 48
Airbags 90
– deactivating, refer to Exception for front passenger seat 56
– indicator/warning lamp 92
– indicator lamp for front passenger airbags 91
– sitting safely 45
Air distribution
– automatic 102
– manual 103
Airing, refer to Ventilation 105
Air outlets, refer to Ventilation 105
Air recirculation, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 104
"Air recirculation on / off" 53
Air supply, automatic climate control 101
Air volume 103
AKI, refer to Fuel specifications 201
Alarm system 35
– avoiding unintentional alarms 36
– interior motion sensor 36
– switching off alarm 35
– switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor 36
– tilt alarm sensor 36
"All channels" 162
"All doors" 30
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 206
"All stations", calling up with radio 154, 157
Alterations, technical, refer to For your own safety 6
"AM", reception range 150, 154
Antenna, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Antenna for mobile phone 176
Antifreeze
– coolant 213
– washer fluid 67
Antilock Brake System ABS 82
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 35
Anti-theft system, refer to Central locking system 30
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 235
Approved engine oils 212
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 235
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 110
Around the center console 14
Around the steering wheel 10
Arrival time
– refer to Computer 71
– refer to Starting destination guidance 138
"Arrow display" for navigation system 139
"Arrow display pop-up instructions" 125
Ashtray 111
Assist, refer to BMW Assist 191
Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems 82
Assistance window 20

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

"Assist. window off" 21
AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 104
"Audio" 151, 153, 158
Audio 150
– controls 150
– switching on/off 150
– tone control 151
– volume 151
Audio device, external 110
Automatic
– air distribution 102
– air volume 102
– cruise control 67
– headlamp control 96
– recirculated-air control AUC 104
– service notification 193
– steering wheel adjustment 47
– storing stations 156
Automatic car washes 118
– also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Automatic climate control 101
– automatic air distribution 102
– convertible program 102
– switching on and off 105
– ventilation with vehicle parked 106
Automatic closing of doors, refer to Automatic soft closing 34
Automatic curb monitor 52
Automatic lighting
– refer to Automatic headlamp control 96
– refer to Daytime running lamps 97
– refer to High-beam assistant 98
– refer to Interior lamps 100
– refer to Pathway lighting 97
– refer to Welcome lamps 96
"Automatic programs" 102
Automatic soft closing 34
Automatic station search 155
"Automatic ventilation" 106
AUTO program with automatic climate control 102
"Autostore" on the radio 154, 156
"AUX" 150, 170, 172
– in audio mode 170
AUX-In connection 110, 170
Average fuel consumption 71
– setting units 79
"Avoid ferries" for navigation system 137
"Avoid highways" for navigation system 136
Avoiding freeways for navigation 136
Avoiding unintentional alarms 36
"Avoid tollroads" for navigation system 137
Axle loads, refer to Weights 235
"A - Z" 184

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 46
Backrests, refer to Seats 46
Backrest width adjustment 46
Backup lamps, replacing bulbs, refer to Tail lamps 217
"Balance", refer to Tone control 152
Band-aids, refer to First-aid kit 225
Bass, refer to Tone control 151
"Bass", tone control 151
Battery
– jump starting 225
– refer to Vehicle battery 222
Battery replacement, remote control for comfort access 38
BC button, refer to Computer 70
Being towed 227
Belts, refer to Safety belts 50
Beverage holder, refer to Cup holders 111
Blower, refer to Air volume 103
"Bluetooth" 177
"BMW Assist" 192
BMW Assist 191
– activating 196
– concierge service 194
– contacting BMW Customer Relations 194
– displaying vehicle data 197
– offered services 191
– roadside assistance 192
– TeleService 193
– updating 195
"BMW Contact" 186
"BMW Contact Numbers" 186
BMW homepage 4
BMW Maintenance System 214
"BMW Service settings" 195
BMW website 4
Bottle holder, refer to Cup holders 111
Bracket for telephone or mobile phone, refer to Snap-in adapter 189
Brake assistant 83
Brake force display 90
Brake lamps
– replacing bulbs, refer to Tail lamps 217
– two-stage 90
Brake rotors
– breaking-in 116
– refer to Braking safely 117

CarManuals2.com

Brakes
– ABS Antilock Brake System 82
– brake force display 90
– breaking-in 116
– CBC Cornering Brake Control 82
– electronic brake-force distribution 83
– handbrake 61
– refer to Braking safely 117
Brake system 116
– brake pads 116
– brake rotors 118
– breaking-in 116
– warning lamp 13, 84
Braking safely 117
Breakdown, M Mobility System 218
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 225
Breaking-in 116
Breaking-in brake pads 116
Breaking-in the clutch 116
Breaking-in the differential, refer to Engine and differential 116
"Brightness" 79, 94
Brightness of Control Display 79
Button for starting engine, refer to Start/Stop button 59
Buttons on steering wheel 11
Bypassing route sections 142

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 6
"Call" 184, 195
Call
– accepting 182
– displaying accepted 185
– ending 183
– in absence 185
– rejecting 183
– starting 183
Calling
– by entering phone number 183
– from phone book 184
– from Top 8 list 185
– redialing 185
Can holder, refer to Cup holders 111
Capacities 235
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 222
Car care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car-care products, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Car Data" 71
Care 215
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cargo loading
– securing cargo 119
– stowing cargo 119
– vehicle 118
Caring for artificial leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for light-alloy wheels, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for plastic, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the carpet, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the vehicle finish, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car key, refer to Keys/remote control 28

CarManuals2.com

Car phone 176
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 110
– refer to Mobile phone 176
– refer to separate operating instructions
Car radio, refer to Radio 154
Car wash 118
– refer to Before driving into a car wash 118
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 117
"Categories" 162
CBC Cornering Brake Control 82
CBS Condition Based Service 214
"CD" 150, 164
CD changer 164
– controls 150
– fast forward/reverse 168
– installation location 168
– random sequence 167
– repeating a track 167
– sampling a track 166
– selecting a CD 165
– selecting a track 165
– switching on/off 150
– tone control 151
– volume 151
CD player 164
– controls 150
– fast forward/reverse 168
– random sequence 167
– repeating a track 167
– sampling a track 166
– selecting a track 165
– switching on/off 150
– tone control 151
– volume 151
Center armrest, adjusting height 110
Center console 14
"Central locking" 30
Central locking
– from inside 32
– from outside 30

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Central locking system 30
– comfort access 36
– hotel function 33
Changes, technical, refer to For your own safety 6
Changing a wheel 220
Changing language on Control Display 80
Changing scale for navigation system display 140
Changing units of measure on Control Display 79
Changing wheels 206
CHECK button 75
Check Control 74
"Check Control messages" 75
Check Gas Cap 200
Checking air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 202
Child-restraint fixing system LATCH 57
Child restraint systems 56
Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely 56
Chock 220
Chrome parts, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cigarette lighter 112
Cigarette lighter socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 112
Cleaning, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Climate" 102
Clock 70
– 12h/24h format 78
– hour signal 78
– setting time and date 78
Closing
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
Closing fuel filler cap 200
Clothes hooks, Coupe 111
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting engine 60
Comfort access 36
– replacing battery, remote control 38
Comfort closing
– windows, with comfort access with Coupe 37
– with comfort access 37
"Comfort" with EDC 85
"Communication" 182, 192
Compact disc
– refer to CD changer 164
– refer to CD player 164
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 59
Compartments, refer to Storage compartments 110
Compressed audio files 164
Computer 70
– clock 70
– displays on Control Display 71
– hour signal 78
"Concert hall", refer to Tone control 153
"Concierge" 194
Concierge service 194
Condensation, refer to When vehicle is parked 118
Condition Based Service CBS 214
"Confirmation" 31
Confirmation signals for locking and unlocking 31
Connecting car vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical devices 112
Consumption display, refer to Average fuel consumption 71
Consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption 71
"Continue guidance to destination?" 139
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– setting brightness 79
– switching off/on 21
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls, refer to Cockpit 10
Convenient operation
– convertible top 31, 32
– windows 31, 32
Convertible
– convertible program for automatic climate control 102
– opening and closing windows 38
– rollover protection system 92
– top 40
– wind deflector 43
– window and convertible top operation with comfort access 37
Convertible top
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– closing manually 42
– convenient operation 32
– emergency closing 42
– opening and closing 41
Coolant 213
– checking level 213
– temperature 69
Cooling, maximum 104
Cooling function, automatic climate control 104
Cooling system, refer to Coolant 213
Copyright 2
Cornering Brake Control CBC 82
Country of destination for navigation 127
Courtesy lamps, refer to Interior lamps 100
Cradle for telephone or mobile phone 110
Cruise control 67
Cruising range 71
Cup holders 15, 111

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Curb weight, refer to Weights 235
"Current position" 145
Current position
– displaying 145
– entering 134
– storing 134
"Customer Relations" 186, 194
Cylinders, refer to Engine data 232

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Data, technical 232
– capacities 235
– dimensions 233
– engine 232
– measurements 233
– weights 235
"Date" 79
Date
– date format 79
– setting 79
"Date format" 79
"Daytime running lamps" 97, 100
Daytime running lamps 97
– replacing bulbs 217
DBC Dynamic Brake Control, warning lamp 85
"Deactivated" 48
Decommissioning the vehicle, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Defect, tires
– refer to Flat Tire Monitor 86
– refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 87
Defrosting windows 103
Defrosting windows and removing condensation 103
Defrosting windshield, refer to Defrosting windows 103
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 103
"Delete address book" for navigation system 135
"Delete all numbers" for mobile phone 185
"Delete data" for navigation system 135
"Delete" for mobile phone 185
Destination address
– deleting 135
– entering 126, 129
Destination for navigation
– destination list 133
– entering via voice 129
– entry 126
– home address 136
– selecting from address book 134
– selecting using information 132
– storing 134
Destination guidance 138
– bypassing route sections 142
– canceling voice instructions 53
– changing specified route 136
– displaying route 139
– distance and arrival 138
– interrupting 138
– starting 138
– terminating/continuing 138
– voice instructions 141
– volume of voice instructions 142
Destination list for navigation 133
Destinations recently driven to 133
"Details" in audio mode 166, 172
"Dial" for mobile phone 183
"Dial number" 183
Digital clock 70
Digital radio, refer to High Definition Radio 158
Dimensions
– Convertible 234
– Coupe 233
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 65
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 141
Directory, refer to Phone book 184
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 134
Direct selection buttons 21
Displacement, refer to Engine data 232
"Display" 79
Display, refer to iDrive controls 16
Display elements, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displaying vehicle data 197
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 100
"Display off" 21
Displays
– on Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
"Display settings" 79, 93
Displays on the windshield, refer to Head-Up Display 93
Disposal
– battery of remote control with comfort access 38
– coolant 213
– vehicle battery 223
Distance, refer to Computer 71
"Distance to dest." 71
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 71
Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 81
Door entry lighting, refer to Interior lamps 100
Door key, refer to Keys/remote control 28

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Door lock 32
"Door locks" 30, 73
Doors
– manual operation 32
– remote control 30, 31
DOT Quality Grades 204
Draft-free ventilation 105
Drivelogic 63
"Driver's door only" 30
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 96
Driving programs, refer to Drivelogic 63
Driving route, refer to Displaying route 139
Driving stability control systems 82
Driving through water 117
Driving tips, refer to General driving notes 116
Drying the air, refer to Cooling function 104
"DSC" 54, 83
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 83
– indicator lamp 13, 83
– malfunction 84
DTC Dynamic Traction Control, indicator lamp 13
DVD for navigation 124
"Dynamic route" for navigation 137
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 83
– M Dynamic Mode MDM 83

E

Easy entry, refer to Entering rear 49
Easy entry/exit 52
"EDC" 54
EDC Electronic Damping Control 85
– "Comfort" 85
– "Normal" 85
– "Sport" 85
Eject button, refer to Buttons on CD player 150
Electrical malfunction
– convertible top 42
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 200
– luggage compartment lid 34
– storage compartment, hotel function 33
Electric convertible top 40
Electric steering wheel adjustment 52
Electronic brake-force distribution 83
Electronic Damping Control EDC 85
Emergency assistance, refer to Roadside Assistance 225
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– convertible top 42
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 200
– hotel function 33
– luggage compartment lid 34
Emergency release for luggage compartment lid in luggage compartment 35
Emergency request 224
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 225
"Enable services" 197
"End call" 184
Engaging forward position, refer to Selector lever positions 62
Engine
– breaking-in 116
– data 232
– M Engine Dynamic Control 64
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 69
– speed 232
– starting 60
– starting, comfort access 36
– switching off 60
Engine compartment 209
Engine coolant 213
Engine oil
– adding 212
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 212
– approved oils 212
– checking oil level 210
– fast measurement 211
– interval between changes, refer to Service requirements 72
– oil change 212
– oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 212
– possible displays 210
– recommended oils 212
– temperature 70
– temperature gauge 70
"Engine oil level" 211
Engine output, refer to Engine data 232
Engine overheating, refer to Coolant temperature 69
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 232
Engine starting, refer to Starting engine 60
"Enter address" 126, 134
Entering address 126, 129
Entering intersection, navigation 128
Entering rear 49
Entering town/city for navigation 127
Entering town/city of destination name 127
Entering zip code for navigation 127
"Entertainment" 150
Entertainment sound output on/off 151
Entry map for destination 131
Equalizer, refer to Tone control 153
"Equalizer", tone control 153
"ESN" 161

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 83
Event data recorders 215
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 117
Exterior mirrors 51
– adjusting 51
– automatic dimming feature 52
– automatic heating 51
– folding in and out 51
– tilting down passenger-side mirror 52
External audio device 110
Eye for tow-starting and towing, refer to Tow fitting 226
Eyes for lashing, refer to Securing cargo 119

F

"Fader", refer to Tone control 152
Fader, refer to Tone control 152
Failure messages, refer to Check Control 74
False alarm
– refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms 36
– refer to Switching off alarm 35
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 50
Fastest route for navigation 136
Fast forward
– CD changer 168
– CD player 168
"Fast route" for navigation 136
"Favorites", calling up with radio 157
Filler neck for washer fluid 67
Filling bottle, refer to M Mobility System 218
Filter, refer to Microfilter/ activated-charcoal filter 105
Fine wood, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
First aid, refer to First-aid kit 225
First-aid kit 225
Flashing when locking and unlocking, refer to Setting confirmation signals 31
Flashlight, refer to Rechargeable flashlight 110
Flat tire
– Flat Tire Monitor 86
– M Mobility System 218
– run-flat tires 88
– spare wheel 221
– Tire Pressure Monitor 87
– warning lamp 87, 88
Flat Tire Monitor 86
– false alarms 86
– initializing system 86
– limits of system 86
– snow chains 207
– warning lamp 87
Floor mats, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Floor mats/carpets, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Fluid reservoir, refer to Filler neck for washer fluid 67
"FM", reception range 150, 154
FM, waveband 154
Folding into raised position convertible top compartment floor, Convertible 35
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 117
Footwell lighting, refer to Interior lamps 100
For specified oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 212
For your own safety 6
Freeway, refer to Route criteria 136
Front airbags 90
Front passenger airbags, deactivating 91
"FTM" 87
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 86
Fuel
– average consumption 71
– display 70
– fuel specifications 201
– high-quality brands 201
– quality 201
– specifications 201
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 235
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 70
Fuel filler door 200
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 200
Fuel gauge 70
Full mobile phone preparation package 176
Full screen display, refer to Switching assistance window off 20
Fuses 223

G

Garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 108
Gasoline
– refer to Average fuel consumption 71
– refer to Fuel specifications 201
– refer to Required fuel 201
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 70
Gear changes 63
Gear display, refer to Displays in instrument cluster 63
Gearshift lever, manual transmission 61

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

General driving notes 116
Glove compartment 109
– rechargeable flashlight 110
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 124
Grills, refer to Ventilation 105
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 235
Ground clearance 116

H

Handbrake 61
– indicator lamp 13, 61
Hands-free system, refer to Microphone 14
Hazard warning flashers 15
"HD radio" 158
HD radio, refer to High Definition Radio 158
Head airbags 90
Headlamp control, automatic 96
Headlamp flasher 65
Headlamps
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 66
– cleaning tank, refer to Capacities 235
– filler neck for washer fluid 209
– replacing bulbs 216
Head Light, refer to Adaptive Head Light 98
Head restraints
– active front head restraints 48
– front 48
– sitting safely 45
"Head-Up Display" 54, 93
Head-Up Display 93
– default view 93
– M view 94
– shift lights 64
Heated
– mirrors 51
– rear window 103
– seats 51
– steering wheel 52
Heater 102
Heating
– exterior mirrors 51
– interior 101
– rear window 103
– residual heat utilization 105
– seats 51
– steering wheel 52
Heating with engine switched off, refer to Residual heat 105
Heavy cargo, refer to Securing cargo 119
Height, refer to Dimensions 233
Height adjustment
– seats 46
– steering wheel 52
High-beam assistant 98
High beams 98
– headlamp flasher 98
– indicator lamp 13
High Definition Radio 158
High water, refer to Driving through water 117
Hills 118
Holder for cups 111
"Home address" for navigation system 136
Homepage of BMW 4
Hood 208
Horn 10
Hotel function 33
– unlocking manually 33
Hot exhaust system 117
"Hour memo" 78
"House number" for destination entry 129
Hydraulic brake assistant, refer to Brake assistant 83
Hydroplaning 117
– also refer to Minimum tread depth 205

I

IBOC, refer to High Definition Radio 158
Ice, refer to Outside temperature warning 70
ID3-Tag, refer to Information about track 166
Identification mark
– recommended tire brands 206
– tire coding 204
Idle 62
iDrive 16
– adjusting brightness 79
– assistance window 20
– changing date and time 78
– changing language 80
– changing menu page 19
– changing settings 77
– changing units of measure and display form 79
– controller 16
– controls 16
– displays, menus 17
– operating principle 17
– selecting menu item 19
– selecting or confirming entry 19
– start menu 17
– status information 20
– symbols 18
Ignition 59
– switched off 60
– switched on 59
Ignition key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 59
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 59
Ignition lock 59
– starting engine with comfort access 38
i menu 17
Imprint 2

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Indicator/warning lamps
– ABS Antilock Brake System 84
– airbags 92
– brake system 84
– DSC 13, 83
– DTC 13
– Flat Tire Monitor 87
– handbrake 13, 61
– MDrive 13, 53
– M Dynamic Mode 13, 83
– parking lamps/low beams 13
– safety belt warning 50
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 88
Indicator and warning lamps, overview 13
Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 202
Inflation pressure monitoring
– refer to Flat Tire Monitor 86
– refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 87
Info menu 17
Information
– on another location 132
– on current position 132
– on town/city of destination 132
"Information" for navigation system 132
Information menu, refer to i menu 17
"Information on destination" 133
"Info sources" 73
Initializing
– Flat Tire Monitor 86
– radio, refer to Storing stations 156
– refer to Power failure 223
– seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
– time and date 77
"Input map" 131
Installation location
– CD changer 168
– drive for navigation DVD 124
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 141
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument lighting 100
Instrument panel
– refer to Cockpit 10
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
Integrated key 28
Integrated universal remote control 108
Interesting destination for navigation 132
"Interim time" 77
Interior lamps 100
– switching on with remote control 31
Interior motion sensor 36
– switching off 36
Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature 52
Intermittent wiper mode 66

J

Jacking points 221
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jump starting 225

K

Keyless-Go, refer to Comfort access 36
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort access 36
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 29
"Keypad" 186
Keys 28
– key-related settings, refer to Personal Profile 29
– spare key 28
Kick-down, refer to Drive mode 63
Knee airbags 90
Knock control 201

L

Lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 96
Lamps and bulbs 216
"Language / Units" 79
– for navigation system 125, 141
"Languages" 80
– for navigation system 125, 141
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 119
Last destinations, refer to Destination list 133
"Last seat pos." 48
LATCH child restraint fixing system 57
LEDs light-emitting diodes 216
Length, refer to Dimensions 233
License plate lamps, replacing bulbs 217
Light-emitting diodes LEDs 216
Lighter 112
"Lighting" 66, 97
Lighting
– instruments 100
– lamps and bulbs 216
– of the vehicle, refer to Lamps 96
Light switch 96
"Limit" 76
Loading, refer to Cargo loading 118
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 119
"Lock after driving" 33
Lock buttons in the doors, refer to Locking 33
Locking 31
– confirmation signals 31
– from inside 33
– from outside 31
– without key, refer to Comfort access 36

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 31
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
Low beams 96
– automatic 96
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulbs 216
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 46
Lug bolts 221
– tightening torque, refer to After mounting 222
– wrench 220
Luggage compartment
– capacity 235
– emergency release 35
– hotel function 33
– increasing capacity, Convertible 35
– opening/closing, refer to Luggage compartment lid 34
– opening from inside 34
– opening from outside 34
– opening with remote control 31
Luggage compartment lid 34
– comfort access 37
– emergency operation 34
– emergency release 35
– opening from inside 34
– opening from outside 34
– opening with remote control 31, 34
– unlocking manually 34
Lumbar support 46
LW, waveband 154

M

M Dynamic Mode MDM 83
– indicator lamp 13, 83
M Engine Dynamic Control 64
– "P 400" 65
– "P 500" 65
– "P 500 Sport" 65
M Mobility System 218
M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 206
Maintenance 214
– refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 214
– refer to Service requirements 72
– refer to Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 214
Maintenance system 214
Malfunction
– convertible top 42
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 200
– hotel function 33
– luggage compartment lid 34
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 74
Manual air distribution 103
"Manual" on the radio 155
Manual operation
– convertible top 42
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 200
– hotel function 33
– luggage compartment lid 34
Manual transmission 61
– tow-starting 228
"Map direction of travel" 140
"Map facing north" 140
Map for navigation
– changing scale 140
– destination entry 131
Map view 140
Map view facing north 140
Master key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Maximum cooling 104
Maximum speed with winter tires 206
MDM, refer to M Dynamic Mode 83
"MDrive" 54
MDrive 53
"M Dynamic Mode" 84
Measurements, refer to Dimensions
– Convertible 234
– Coupe 233
Memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
MENU, button refer to Start menu 17
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Message list for traffic information 143
Microfilter 105
Microphone
– for telephone 14
– for voice command system 14
Mirror dimming feature 52
Mirrors 51
– automatic curb monitor 52
– folding in and out 51
– heating 51
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
"Missed calls" 184
Missed calls 185
Mobile phone
– accepted calls 185
– adjusting volume 182
– calling 183
– ending call 183
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 110
– missed calls 185
– operation by voice 187
– operation via iDrive 182
– redialing 185
– refer to separate operating instructions
– Top 8 185
– touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method 186

CarManuals2.com

Mobile phone battery 190
Mobile Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 225
Mobility System 218
Monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Monitoring pressure of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 86
"Monitor on / off" 53
Most recent mobile phone numbers 185
MP3
– compressed audio files 164
– USB/audio interface 171
Multifunction steering wheel, refer to Buttons on steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 65
– refer to Wiper system 66
Music tracks
– random play sequence 167
– sampling, scan 166
"Mute on / off" 53
"M View" 93
"M view" 94
MW, waveband 154

N

"Navigation" 71, 126
Navigation destination
– entering manually 126
– selecting via map 131
Navigation drive, installation location 124
Navigation DVD 124
Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 141
Navigation system 124
– address book 134
– bypassing route sections 142
– destination entry 126
– destination guidance in assistance window 124
– destination list 133
– displaying current position 145
– displaying route 139
– entering a destination manually 126
– entering destination via voice 129
– last destinations 133
– looking for interesting destination 132
– navigation DVD 124
– route list 141
– selecting destination using information 132
– selecting destination via map 131
– selecting route criteria 136
– starting destination guidance 138
– switching off, refer to Terminating/continuing destination guidance 138
– terminating/continuing destination guidance 138
– voice instructions 141
– volume adjustment 142
"Navigation voice instructions" 53, 141
Neck support, refer to Front head restraints 48
"New address" for navigation system 134
"New destination" 126, 131
New remote controls 28
"New route" 142
New wheels and tires 206
"Next entertainment source" 53
"Normal" with EDC 85
Nozzles, refer to Ventilation 105
Nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles 67
Nylon rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 226

O

CarManuals2.com

OBD socket, refer to Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface 215
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 201
Odometer 69
Oil, refer to Engine oil 210
Oil change interval
– refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models
– refer to Service requirements 72
"On a new destination" for navigation system 132
"Onboard info" 71
Onboard monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Onboard tool kit 216
"On destination" 132
"On location" 132
Opening and closing
– comfort access 36
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
– using door lock 32
– using the remote control 30
Operating principle, iDrive 17
Operation by voice for mobile phone 187
– adjusting volume 188
– canceling 187
– commands 187
– correcting phone number 188
– dialing phone number 188
– placing a call 188
– redialing 189
– voice phone book 188

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

"Options" 195
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
Output, refer to Engine data 232
Outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 104
Outside temperature display 70
– changing unit of measure 79
Overview
– operating principle 17
– radio control 150
– screen display 20

P

"P 400" 65
"P 500" 65
"P 500 Sport" 65
Panic mode 31
Park Distance Control PDC 81
"Parked car operation" 106
"Parked car ventilation" 106
Parked car ventilation
– activating activation times 107
– LED 101
– setting activation time 106
– switching on and off directly 106
Parking, vehicle 60
Parking aid, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 81
Parking assistant, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 81
Parking brake, refer to Handbrake 61
Parking lamps 96
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulbs 217
Parts and accessories 6
Passenger-side exterior mirror, tilting down 52
"Pathway lighting" 97
Pathway lighting 97
"PDC" 82
"PDC display on" 82
PDC Park Distance Control 81
Personal Profile 29
"Perspective" 140
"Phone" 178, 180, 183
Phone book 182
– changing entry 184
– creating and editing voice phone book 188
– deleting all entries 185
– deleting entry 185
– dialing phone number 184
Phone numbers
– deleting from phone book 185
– dialing 183
– most recent numbers 185
– selecting in phone book 185
– Top 8 185
Pinch protection system of power windows 40
Plasters, refer to First-aid kit 225
"Play" on the radio 162
Plugging unit for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 59
Pollen, refer to Microfilter/ activated-charcoal filter 105
Position, refer to Displaying current position 145
Position, refer to Storing current position 134
"POWER" 54
POWER, refer to M Engine Dynamic Control 64
Power failure 223
Power windows, refer to Windows 38
"Presets" on the radio 154, 162
Presetting parked car ventilation activation times 106
Pressure, tires 202
– producing with M Mobility System 218
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 87
"Profile" 197
Programmable button on steering wheel 53
Programmable memory buttons 21
Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system of windows 40

R

Radiator fluid, refer to Coolant 213
Radio
– Autostore 156
– controls 150
– High Definition Radio 158
– sampling stations 155
– satellite radio 161
– selecting frequency manually 155
– selecting waveband 150, 154
– station search 155
– station selection 154
– station with best reception 156
– storing stations 156
– switching on/off 150
– tone control 151
– volume 151
– Weather Band, refer to Weather news flashes 158
Radio key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 59
Radio readiness 59
– switched off 60
– switched on 59
– with comfort access 37
Radio stations, storing 156
Rain sensor, windshield wiper system 66
"Random", random play sequence 167

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

"Random all" in audio mode 168
"Random directory" in audio mode 167
Random play sequence
– CD changer 167
– CD player 167
"RDS" 157
Reading lamps 100
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 217
Rearview mirrors, refer to Mirrors 51
Rear window
– heating 103
– opening and closing 39
"Received calls" 184
Reception
– quality 157
– radio stations 157
– regional station 156
Reception quality of mobile phone, refer to Status information 20
Rechargeable flashlight 110
Recirculated-air mode, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 104
Recirculation of air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 104
Reclining seat, refer to Seats 46
Recording times, refer to Stopwatch 77
"Redial" for mobile phone 184
Redialing with mobile phone 189
Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps 217
Refueling 200
Releasing, hood 208
Releasing the locks, refer to Unlocking 37
"Relock door if not opened" 33
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 71
Remaining distance to destination, refer to Computer 71
Remote control 28
– battery replacement 38
– comfort access 36
– garage-door opener 108
– luggage compartment lid 31
– malfunction 31, 38
Removing condensation from windows 103
"Repeat directory" in audio mode 167
"Repeat" in audio mode 167
"Repeat track" in audio mode 167
Replacement fuses 223
Replacement remote control, refer to New remote controls 28
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 216
Replacing tires, changing a wheel 220
Reporting safety defects 7
Required fuel 201
Reserve warning, refer to Fuel gauge 70
"Reset" 87, 88
– stopwatch 77
– tone settings 153
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 153
"Reset to default" with MDrive 54
Residual heat 105
Restraint systems
– for children 56
– refer to Safety belts 50
Retreaded tires 206
Reverse, fast
– CD changer 168
– CD player 168
Reverse gear 62
– manual transmission 61
Road map 140
"Roadside Assistance" 186, 192
Roadside Assistance 225
Roadside assistance 192
Roadside parking lamps 98
– replacing bulbs, refer to Parking lamps 217
Rollover protection system on Convertible 92
– lowering 92
Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 226
Rotary/pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 136
– bypassing sections 142
– changing 142
– changing criteria 136
– display 139
– displaying arrow display 139
– displaying map view 140
– displaying streets or towns/cities 141
– selecting 136
Route information, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 141
Route map, refer to Displaying map view 140
"Route preference", changing 136
Route selection 136
Rubber parts, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Run-flat tires
– continuing driving with a damaged tire 88
– flat tire 88

S

Safety belts 50
– damage 51
– indicator lamp 50
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– reminder 50
– sitting safely 45
Safety belt tensioners, refer to Safety belts 50

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Safety systems
– ABS Antilock Brake System 82
– airbags 90
– driving stability control systems 82
– rollover protection system, Convertible 92
– safety belts 50
Satellite radio 161
– enabling channels 161
– selecting channel 162
– storing channel 162
"SAT" with radio 150, 161
"Save current destination" 136
"Scan"
– music tracks on CD 166
– stations with radio 155
Scan
– CD changer 166
– CD player 166
– radio 155
"Scan all" in audio mode 166
"Scan directory" in audio mode 166
Screw thread for tow fitting 227
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 161
Seats 46
– adjusting 46
– adjusting backrest width 46
– heating 51
– lumbar support 46
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
– sitting safely 45
– storing the setting 47
– thigh support 46
Securing cargo 119
– ski bag 113
"Select as destination" 132, 195
"Select current speed" 77
Selecting audio sources, refer to Operating via iDrive 150
Selecting frequency manually 155
Selecting menu items 19
Selecting route 136
Selection options with navigation system 136
Selector lever 62
– manual transmission 61
– Sequential Manual Transmission 62
Selector lever lock, refer to Shiftlock 62
Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 62
– Drivelogic driving programs 63
– Drive mode 63
– idle 62
– initializing system, refer to After changing wheels/ tires 207
– kick-down 63
– reverse gear 62
– Sequential mode 62
– shift lights 64
– shiftlock 62
– towing 227
– tow-starting 228
Sequential mode 62
"Service" 73, 193, 211
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 225
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 214
Service Interval Display
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 214
– refer to Service requirements 72
"Service notification" 193
"Service Request" 186, 193
"Service requirements" 73, 193, 211
Service requirements 72
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 214
"Service Status" 197
"Set"
– in audio mode 150
– in trip computer 72
"Set date" 79
"Set service date" 74
"Set time" 78
Setting button, refer to Controls, controller 16
"Settings" 197
– for BMW Assist 195
– for unlocking 30
Settings
– changing on Control Display 77
– clock, 12h/24h mode 78
– configuring, refer to MDrive 53
– configuring, refer to Personal Profile 29
– date 79
– language 80
– units of measure 79
Settings menu, refer to i menu 17
Setting time, refer to Preselecting activation time 106
Shifting 63
Shift lights 64
Shiftlock 62
Shift paddles on steering wheel 63
Shock absorber control, refer to EDC Electronic Damping Control 85
Short commands of voice command system 236
"Short route" for navigation 136
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 136
"Show current position" 131
"Show destination position" 131
Side airbags 90
Side turn signals, replacing bulbs 217

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Signaling a turn, triple turn signal activation 65
Sill panel lighting, refer to Interior lamps 100
Sitting safely 45
– with airbags 45
– with head restraints 45
– with safety belts 45
Ski bag 112
Slope assistant, refer to Starting off on slopes 117
SMG, refer to Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 62
"SMG Drivelogic" 54, 64
Snap-in adapter
– mounting/removing 189
– using 176
Snow chains 207
Socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 112
Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 215
Socket for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 59
Soft closure aid, refer to Automatic soft closing 34
Song search with CD, refer to Sampling tracks, scan 166
SOS, refer to Initiating an emergency request 224
Spare
– adapter for spare key 28
– fuses 223
– key 28
– wheel, driving with spare wheel 222
– wheel, refer to Changing wheels 220
Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils 212
Speed-dependent volume 152
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 76
Speedometer 12
"Speed volume", refer to Tone control 152
Speed with winter tires 206
"Sport" with EDC 85
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 82
Start/Stop button 59
– starting the engine 60
– switching off the engine 60
"Start" for stopwatch 77
"Start guidance" 129, 138
Starting assistant, refer to Starting off on slopes 117
Starting difficulties, refer to Jump starting 225
Starting engine 60
Starting off
– on a slippery surface 117
– on slopes 117
Start menu, iDrive 17
"Start route guidance" 131
"Start service" 193
"Start Service" for BMW Assist 194
"State / Province" for destination entry 127
"State inspection" 74
Station, refer to Radio 154
"Status" 73
Status information on Control Display 20
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steering wheel
– adjustment 52
– automatic adjustment, refer to Easy entry/exit 52
– automatic adjustment, refer to Steering wheel memory 47
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– heating 52
– lock, refer to Ignition lock 59
– MDrive button 53
– memory 47
– programmable button 53
– shift paddles 63
"Steering wheel button" 53
Steering-wheel shift buttons, refer to Shift paddles 63
"Stop" for stopwatch 77
"Stopwatch" 77
Stopwatch 77
Storage compartments 110
"Store in address book" for navigation system 134
"Store" on the radio 156, 163
Storing current position 134
Storing sitting position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
Storing tires 207
"Street" for destination entry 128
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 202
"Surround Settings", refer to Tone control 152
SW, waveband 154
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching automatically between high beams and low beams, refer to High-beam assistant 98
Switching on
– audio 150
– CD changer 150
– CD player 150
– radio 150
Swiveling headlamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 98
Symbols 4
– indicator and warning lamps 13
– navigation system 144
– status information 20
– traffic information with navigation system 142

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

T

Tachometer 69
Tail lamps 217
– replacing bulbs 217
Tank capacity
– also refer to Capacities 235
– fuel tank capacity 200
Target cursor for navigation 131
Technical alterations, refer to For your own safety 6
Technical data 232
Telematics, refer to BMW Assist 191
Telephone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 110
– refer to Mobile phone 176
– refer to separate operating instructions
"Telephone list" 53
TeleService 193
Temperature
– adjusting in upper body region 103
– adjusting with automatic climate control 102
– changing units of measure 79
– refer to Coolant temperature 69
Temperature display
– changing units of measure 79
– outside temperature 69
– outside temperature warning 70
Temperature gauge, engine oil 70
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 67
"Terminate services" 196
"Text language" 80
"Theater", refer to Tone control 153
The individual vehicle 5
Tie-down points, refer to Securing cargo 119
Tightening torque of the lug bolts, refer to After mounting 222
Tilt alarm sensor 36
– switching off 36
Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 52
"Time" 78
"Time / Date" 78
"Time format" 78
Timer, refer to Preselecting activation time 106
"Timer 1" for parked-car ventilation 106
"Timer 2" for parked-car ventilation 106
Tire inflation pressure 202
Tire pressure loss 88
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 87
Tire Quality Grading 204
Tire replacement, new wheels and tires 206
Tires
– age 204
– air loss 87, 88
– breaking-in 116
– condition 205
– damage 205
– inflation pressure 202
– minimum tread depth 205
– M Mobility System 218
– monitoring inflation pressure, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 86
– new wheels and tires 206
– pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 87
– replacing 206
– retreaded tires 206
– size 203
– size, refer to The right wheels and tires 206
– wear indicators 205
– wheel/tire combination 206
– winter tires 206
TMC station, refer to Traffic information 142
"Tone" 151
Tone dialing method 186
Tone in audio mode
– adjusting 151
– middle setting 153
Tone on locking/unlocking 31
Tools, refer to Onboard tool kit 216
Top 40
"Top 8" for mobile phone 184
Torque
– lug bolts, refer to After mounting 222
– refer to Engine data 232
Touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method 186
Tow bar 227
Tow fitting 226
Towing 226
– methods 227
– tow fittings 226
– with manual transmission 227
"Town / City" for destination entry 127
Tow rope 227
Tow-starting 226
"TPM" 88
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 87
– resetting system 88
– system limits 87
– warning lamp 88
Tracks
– finding 166
– random sequence 167
– sampling on CD 166
– selecting with CD 165
Track width, refer to Dimensions 233
Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 83
Traffic congestion
– displaying traffic information 142
– refer to Bypassing route sections 142

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Traffic information for navigation
– depiction in route map 144
– displaying 143
– during destination guidance 145
– symbols 144
Traffic information with navigation 142
"Traffic Info settings" 143
Transmission
– breaking-in 116
– Drivelogic 63
– Drive mode 63
– idle 62
– kick-down, refer to Drive mode 63
– manual transmission 61
– reverse gear 62
– Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 62
– Sequential mode 62
– shift lights 64
– starting assistant, refer to Starting off on slopes 117
– towing 227
– tow-starting 228
Transporting children safely 56
Transport securing device, refer to Securing cargo 119
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tread depth 205
Treble, refer to Tone control 151
"Treble", tone control 151
"Trip computer" 72
Trip computer 72
Trip-distance counter
– refer to Trip computer 72
– refer to Trip meter 69
"Triple turn signal" 66
Trip meter, also refer to Trip computer 72
Trip odometer 69
Trunk, refer to Luggage compartment 35
Trunk lid, refer to Luggage compartment lid 34
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 233
Turn signals 65

U

"Unchanged", with MDrive 54
Undercarriage protection, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 204
"Units" 79
Units
– average fuel consumption 79
– temperature 79
Universal garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 108
Universal remote control, refer to Integrated universal remote control 108
"Unlock button" 30
Unlocking
– from inside 33
– from outside 30
– without key, refer to Comfort access 36
Unlocking without key, refer to Comfort access 36
"Update services" 195
Upshift display, refer to Shift lights 64
USB/audio interface 171
"USB" in audio mode 172
"Use current location as address" 134, 136
Used batteries
– refer to Disposal 223
– refer to Replacing battery 38
Using turn signals 65

V

Valve screw caps, refer to After mounting 222
Vehicle
– battery 222
– breaking-in 116
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– cargo loading 118
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 233
– parking 60
– washing, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– weights 235
"Vehicle / Tires" for unlocking 30
Vehicle jack 220
– jacking points 221
Vehicle position, refer to Displaying current position 145
Ventilation 105
– draft-free 105
– for cooling 105
– parked car ventilation 106
Vent outlets of automatic climate control 101
"Vent settings" 104
Viscosity 212
Voice, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 141
Voice command system
– overview 23
– short commands 236
Voice instructions for navigation system 141
– muting 53
– repeating 53, 142
– switching on/off 53, 141
– volume 142
Voice phone book 188

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Volume 150
– audio sources 150
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 235
– luggage compartment 235
– mobile phone 182
– setting speed-dependent 152
– voice instructions 142
– windshield cleaning system, refer to Capacities 235
Volume adjustment in audio mode
– front-to-rear 152
– right/left 152

W

Warning lamps, refer to Indicator and warning lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 74
Warning triangle 225
Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 214
Washer fluid
– capacity of the reservoir 67
– wiper system 67
Washing the vehicle, also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 117
Waveband for radio 154
"WB" 150, 158
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 205
Weather news flashes 158
Website BMW 4
Weights 235
Welcome lamps 96
Wheel/tire combination, refer to New wheels and tires 206
Wheel/tire damage 205
Wheel/tire replacement, refer to New wheels and tires 206
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 233
Wheels and tires 202
Width, refer to Dimensions 233
Wind deflector 43
Windows 38
– comfort closing with comfort access 37
– convenient operation 31, 32
– opening and closing, Convertible 38
– opening and closing, Coupe 38
– rear window, Convertible 39
Windshield
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 66
– defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 103
– displays, refer to Head-Up Display 93
Windshield wash
– automatic, refer to Rain sensor 66
– capacities, reservoir 235
– filler neck for washer fluid 209
– nozzles 67
– washer fluid 67
– wiper system 66
Windshield wipers, refer to Washer system, replacing wiper blades 216
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 66
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Winter tires 206
– setting speed limit 76
– storage 207
Wiper blades
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– replacing 216
Wiper system 66
– rain sensor 66
– washer fluid 67
– windshield washer nozzles 67
"With highways" for navigation system 136
Wood decoration, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Word matching principle for navigation 137
Working in the engine compartment 208
Wrenches/screwdrivers, refer to Onboard tool kit 216

X

Xenon lamps 216
– replacing bulbs 216

Y

Your individual vehicle
– programmable button on steering wheel 53
– settings, refer to MDrive 53
– settings, refer to Personal Profile 29

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

CarManuals2.com

01 41 0 014 244 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 244 - © 08/07 BMW AG